

ENGLISH GRAMMAR

(SECOND PART)



COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES
MODAL VERBS
PRESENT AND PAST PERFECT
TENSE REVISION
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES
TOO AND ENOUGH
RELATIVE CLAUSES
THE PASSIVE
REPORTED SPEECH
PREPOSITIONS



ENGLISH B1
UNIV +25 / CICLOS
CFPA Giner de los Ríos, Alicante

QUANTIFIERS: TALKING ABOUT QUANTITIES

What are quantifiers?

A quantifier is a word or phrase which is used before a noun to indicate the amount or quantity:

'Some', 'many', 'a lot of' and 'a few' are examples of quantifiers.

Quantifiers can be used with both [countable and uncountable nouns](#).

SOME AND ANY: *Some* and *any* are used with countable and uncountable nouns, to describe an indefinite or incomplete quantity.

Some is used in **positive** statements:

Examples

I had **some** rice for lunch / He's got **some** books from the library.

It is also used in questions where we are sure about the answer.

Any is used in questions and with **not** in **negative** statements:

Examples

Have you got **any** tea? / He didn't give me **any** tea.

	COUNTABLE NOUNS	UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS
SINGULAR	A/AN/THE	SOME (+) ANY (-/?)
PLURAL	SOME (+) ANY (-/?)	-----

	COUNTABLE NOUNS	UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS
SINGULAR	There is a book (+) There isn't a book (-) Is there a book?	There is some sugar (+) There isn't any sugar (-) Is there any sugar?
PLURAL	There are some books (+) There aren't any books (-) Are there any books?	-----

A few and few, a little and little: These expressions show the speaker's **attitude** towards the quantity he/she is referring to.

A few (for countable nouns) and **a little** (for uncountable nouns) describe the quantity in a **positive** way:

"I've got **a few** friends" (= maybe not many, but enough)
"I've got **a little** money" (= I've got enough to live on)

Few and **little** describe the quantity in a **negative** way:

Few people visited him in hospital (= he had almost no visitors)
He had **little** money (= almost no money)

Quantifiers with countable and uncountable nouns

Adjectives and adjectival phrases that describe quantity are shown below. Some can only go with *countable* nouns (friends, cups, people), and some can only go with *uncountable* nouns (sugar, tea, money, advice).

Only with uncountable nouns	With uncountable and countable nouns	Only with countable nouns
much*		many*
a little	no/none	a few
a bit (of)	some (any)	a number (of)
a large quantity of	a lot of	several
a great deal of	lots of	a large number of
a large amount of	plenty of	a great number of
+ noun		

MUCH AND MANY are used in negative and question forms.

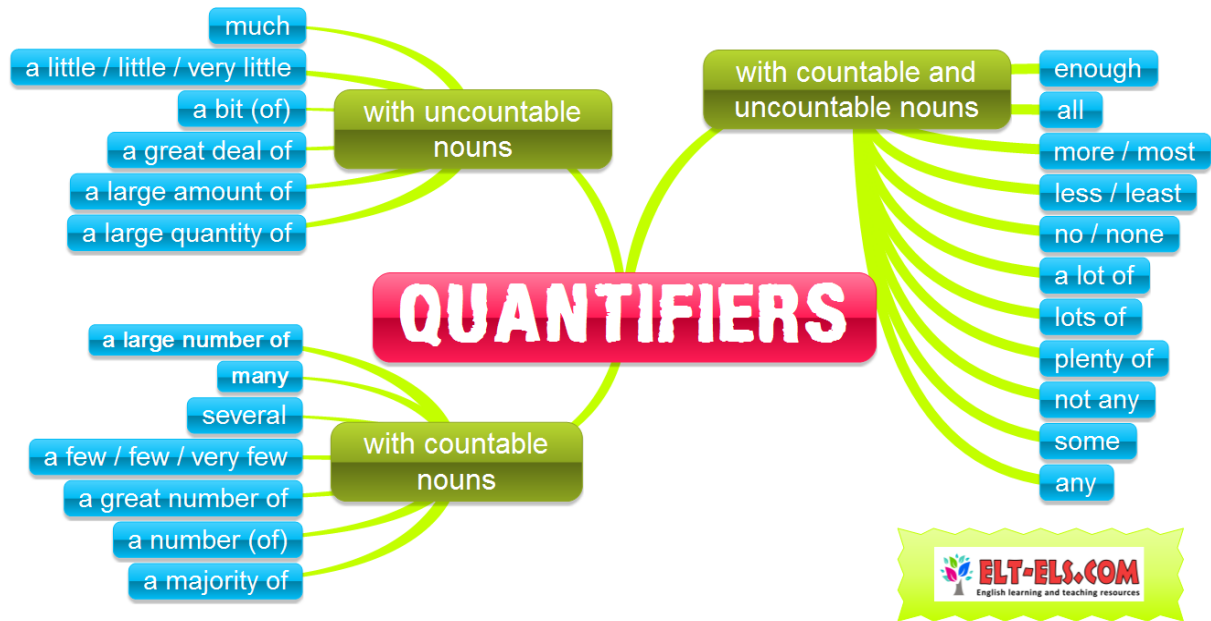
How much money have you got? / **How many** cigarettes have you smoked? /
There's **not much** sugar in the cupboard. / There weren't **many** people at the concert.

They are also used with *too*, *(not) so*, and *(not) as* :

There were **too many** people at the concert - we couldn't see the band. / It's a problem when there are **so many** people.

In positive statements, we use **a lot of**:

I've got **a lot of** work this week. / There were **a lot of** people at the concert.



CARDINAL and ORDINAL NUMBERS

The **cardinal** numbers (one, two, three, etc.) are adjectives referring to quantity, and the **ordinal** numbers (first, second, third, etc.) refer to distribution.

Number	Cardinal	Ordinal
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
4	four	fourth
5	five	fifth

Fractions and decimals

Said	Written	Said
half	0.5	point five
a quarter	0.25	point two five
three quarters	0.75	point seven five

Percentages

Written	Said
25%	twenty five percent
50%	fifty percent
100%	a/one hundred percent

PREPOSITIONS AND ADVERBS WITH NUMBERS AND QUANTITIES

MORE

We use **more** when we want to talk about a **larger** or **extra number** or **amount** of something.

Would you like some **more** food ?

We also use it to emphasize the large size of something:

More than 20,000 demonstrators crowded into the square.

LESS

We use the quantifier *less* to talk about reduced quantities, amounts or degree. *Less* is a comparative word.

Their marriage lasted **less than** two years.

Heath Square is **less than** four miles away from Dublin city centre.

OVER

We use *over* to indicate more than an expected number or amount:

- This amount is over our prediction.
- Kids twelve and over can watch this movie.
- The phone rang for over a minute.

UP TO (with numbers)

We use *up to* with numbers and amounts when we are being approximate. It means 'as much as' or 'not more than':

*There were **up to** 100 guests at the wedding.*

*Behind each episode of 'The Simpsons' there's a crew of **up to** 80 technicians.*

ABOUT (adv)

About is used to imply a **little more or less** than the stated number or amount:

about six feet tall / about two months ago

Comparatives and Superlatives of Adjectives

Write the comparative and superlative forms of the adjectives below.

<i>example:</i> big / bigger / biggest or important / more important / most important					
Adjective	Comparative	Superlative	Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
1. tall			22. far		
2. cheap			23. bad		
3. expensive			24. fat		
4. good			25. interesting		
5. lazy			26. narrow		
6. pretty			27. safe		
7. beautiful			28. dangerous		
8. difficult			29. messy		
9. boring			30. handsome		
10. shy			31. attractive		
11. happy			32. delicious		
12. short			33. useful		
13. famous			34. easy		
14. comfortable			35. lucky		
15. ugly			36. quiet		
16. warm			37. noisy		
17. long			38. modern		
18. intelligent			39. patient		
19. wide			40. convenient		
20. thick			41. accurate		
21. smart					

The Comparative Form of Adjectives

Complete the following sentences with the correct **comparative form** of the words listed below.

bad important crowded good high heavy convenient difficult
cheap expensive quiet easy thin healthy dangerous cold

1. In Canada, January is _____ than March.
2. I think that good health is _____ than money.
3. I can't carry my suitcase. It's much _____ than yours.
4. I can afford to buy a new bike but not a new car. A car is _____ than a bike.
5. You look _____ than the last time I saw you. Have you lost weight?
6. I couldn't get a seat in the restaurant. It was _____ than usual.
7. Mountains are _____ than hills.
8. He got a very good mark on his exam. The exam was _____ than he had expected.
9. You should go to the doctor. Your cold is _____ than it was a few days ago.
10. There is a lot of crime in the big cities. They are _____ than the small town where I live.
11. I don't understand this lesson. It is _____ than the last one we did.
12. I can't study in this room. It's too noisy. I'm going to find a _____ place.
13. Our apartment is far from everything. We want to move to a _____ location.
14. Orange juice is _____ than Coke.
15. The store is having a great sale today. Most televisions are 25% _____ than they were yesterday.
16. The doctor told me that I can go back to work if I feel _____ tomorrow.

Comparatives Using *as...as*

Make your own comparisons using the words provided and the structure *as...as*.

Ex. *My apartment/ large/ yours*
My car /expensive/ your car

My apartment is as large as yours.
My car isn't as expensive as your car.

1. biology/ interesting/ history _____
2. train/ fast/ airplane _____
3. algebra/ difficult/ geometry _____
4. Batman / popular/ Superman _____
5. lemon/ sweet/ orange _____
6. morning/ warm/ afternoon _____
7. robin / big/ eagle _____
8. my neighbor/ friendly/ yours _____
9. tiger/ dangerous/ lion _____
10. bicycle/ expensive/ motorcycle _____
11. house/ tall/ skyscraper _____
12. France/ beautiful/ Switzerland _____
13. my old shoes/ comfortable/ new shoes _____
14. grammar/ difficult / spelling _____
15. Beethoven/ famous / Mozart _____
16. frozen yogurt/ fattening/ ice cream _____
17. Coke/ healthy/ fruit juice _____
18. my apartment/ convenient/ yours _____
19. big cities/ safe/ small towns _____
20. New York hotels/ expensive/ Tokyo hotels _____

The Superlative Form of Adjectives

Complete the following sentences with the correct superlative form of the words listed below.

funny high delicious easy cold boring lucky smart
dirty rich valuable bad large cheap long scary

1. Yesterday was _____ day of the year. I almost froze to death walking home from school!
2. That was _____ movie I've ever seen. I almost walked out in the middle.
3. Please give me your recipe. That is _____ cake I've ever eaten.
4. Jerry is _____ student in our class. He gets the top grades in every course.
5. Bob told _____ story last night. I couldn't stop laughing.
6. Whales are _____ animals in the world.
7. The Nile is _____ river in the world.
8. Marie is _____ person I know. She has won the lottery four times!
9. He is _____ speaker I have ever heard. Half the audience fell asleep during his speech.
10. Mount Everest is _____ mountain in the world.
11. That is _____ painting in the art gallery. It's worth a million dollars.
12. Bill Gates is one of _____ men in the world.
13. I finished the exercise in five minutes. It was _____ homework the teacher has ever given us.
14. Arthur hates to clean. He has _____ apartment I've ever seen.
15. My dinner only cost \$6.00. That must be _____ restaurant in town.
16. I was afraid to turn off the lights last night. That was _____ show I've ever watched.

The Superlative Form of Adjectives

A) Write questions using the words provided and the superlative form of the adjective.

Ex. what/ big mistake/ ever made What is the biggest mistake you have ever made?

1. what /beautiful place to visit/ your country

2. who/ kind person/ you know

3. what/ good movie/ ever seen

4. what/ happy day/ in your life

5. what/ crazy thing/ ever done

6. what/ expensive thing/ ever bought

7. what/ good restaurant/ your city

8. what/ exciting place/ ever been

9. who/ interesting person/ ever met

B) Ask a classmate the questions you have written or write your own answers on a separate piece of paper.

Comparatives and Superlatives of Adverbs

A. Write the comparative and superlative forms of the adverbs below.

Adverb	Comparative	Superlative
<i>Ex. fast</i>	<i>faster</i>	<i>the fastest</i>
1. hard	_____	_____
2. carefully	_____	_____
3. early	_____	_____
4. quickly	_____	_____
5. slowly	_____	_____
6. beautifully	_____	_____
7. well	_____	_____
8. clearly	_____	_____
9. late	_____	_____
10. far	_____	_____
11. badly	_____	_____
12. fluently	_____	_____

B. Complete the following sentences with the correct form (comparative or superlative) of the adverb provided.

1. I drive _____ (carefully) than my husband.
2. Angela works _____ (hard) than I do, but our secretary works _____ (hard) of all of us.
3. Anita sings _____ (beautifully) of all the people in the choir.
4. Our teacher explains the lessons _____ (clearly) than your teacher.
5. Robert arrived at the meeting _____ (early) than Francis.
6. Ken arrived _____ (early) of them all.
7. Teenagers usually drive _____ (fast) than their parents.
8. My daughter cooks _____ (well) than I do, but my husband cooks _____ (well) of all of us.
9. Rene speaks _____ (fluently) of all the ESL students in the class.
10. The teacher arrived _____ (late) than the students.

Comparatives and Superlatives – Adjectives and Adverbs

Make comparisons of the following. Use your own ideas. Write three sentences for each set, one using the comparative structure with than, one using the comparative structure with as...as, and one using the superlative. (Use at least one adverb in the exercise.)

Ex. watermelon/ grapefruit/ orange.

A grapefruit is bigger than an orange.

A grapefruit isn't as big as a watermelon.

A watermelon is the biggest fruit of the three.

1. turtle/ rabbit/ fox _____

2. feather/ book/ television _____

3. running shoes/ bedroom slippers/ high heeled shoes _____

4. bicycle/ motorcycle/ car _____

5. teacher/ doctor/ lawyer _____

6. egg/ pancake/ donut _____

Comparatives and Superlatives – Adjectives and Adverbs

Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the adjective or adverb, comparative or superlative of the words provided.

1. This is _____ (fancy) dress I own.
2. In my opinion, a deer moves _____ (graceful) of all the animals.
3. The politician spoke _____ (loud) than was necessary.
4. When we travel, my suitcase is always _____ (heavy) than my husband's.
5. January is _____ (cold) month of the year.
6. Mrs. Pedrido speaks _____ (fluent) than her husband, but her daughter speaks _____ (fluent) of the whole family.
7. December 21 is the _____ (short) day of the year. It is _____ (short) than any other.
8. Andrew is _____ (fast) runner on the team.
9. This apartment is _____ (convenient) of all the apartments I have seen.
10. Annie usually gets up _____ (early) than her sister.
11. Max finished the homework _____ (fast) than anyone else in the class.
12. A turtle moves _____ (slow) than a rabbit.
13. Bonnie works _____ (hard) of all the employees in the office.
14. This book is _____ (interesting) than the one I read last week.
15. Daniel drives _____ (careful) than his father.
16. Judy goes to the library _____ (often) than I do.
17. That gold necklace is _____ (expensive) one in the whole store.
18. This is _____ (bad) movie I have ever seen.
19. Shaun sings even _____ (beautiful) than her mother, who is a famous opera star. In fact, she has _____ (beautiful) voice I've ever heard.



Comparatives and Superlatives – Adjectives and Adverbs

Class Survey

Interview your classmates and complete the following chart. Then do the exercises on the following pages. (If you have a large class, break into two or three smaller groups.) You may wish to write the questions on a separate piece of paper before you begin your survey.

Name of student	Arrived at school	Number of siblings	Length of time in city	Number of languages	Distance from school	Shoe size	Number of instruments played	Number of sports played	height



Class Survey - Comparatives

Using the information from the survey on the previous page, make as many sentences as you can about your classmates. Use the comparative form of an adjective or adverb and the structures **than** or **as....as**.

*Ex. Mary arrived at school earlier than Jane.
John's feet are not as large as Bill's.
Andrea studied longer than I did last night.*

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____

Class Survey - Superlatives

Using the information from the survey, answer the following questions in complete sentences.

1. Who got to school the earliest today? _____

2. Who has the most siblings? _____

3. Who has lived in this city the longest? _____

4. Who speaks the most languages? _____

5. Who lives the farthest away from the school? _____

6. Who wears the largest shoe size? _____

7. Who is the most musical person in the class? _____

8. Who is the most athletic person in the class? _____

9. Who is the tallest student in the class _____

10. Who studied the hardest last night? _____

Answers

Page 1.

1 See page 13

Page 2.

1. colder 2. more important 3. heavier 4. more expensive 5. thinner 6. more crowded 7. higher 8. easier 9. worse 10. more dangerous 11. more difficult 12. quieter 13. more convenient 14. healthier 15. cheaper 16. better

Page 3.

1. Biology is/isn't as interesting as history 2. A train isn't as fast as a plane 3. Algebra is/isn't as difficult as geometry. 4. Batman is/isn't as popular as Superman. 5. A lemon isn't as sweet as an orange. 6. The morning isn't as warm as the afternoon. 7. A robin isn't as big as an eagle. 8. My neighbor is/isn't as friendly as yours. 9. A tiger is as dangerous as a lion. 10. A bicycle isn't as expensive as a motorcycle. 11. A house isn't as tall as a skyscraper. 12. France is/isn't as beautiful as Switzerland. 13. My old shoes are/aren't as comfortable as my new shoes. 14. Grammar is/isn't as difficult as spelling. 15. Beethoven is as famous as Mozart. 16. Frozen yogurt is/isn't as fattening as ice-cream. 17. Coke isn't as health as fruit juice. 18. My apartment is/isn't as convenient as yours. 19. Big cities are/aren't as safe as small towns. New York hotels are/aren't as expensive as Tokyo hotels.

Page 4.

1. the coldest 2. the worst 3. the most delicious 4. the smartest 5. the funniest 6. the largest 7. the longest 8. the luckiest 9. the most boring 10. the highest 11. the most valuable 12. the richest 13. the easiest 14. the dirtiest 15. the cheapest 16. the scariest

Page 5.

1. What is the most beautiful place to visit in your country? 2. Who is the kindest person you know? 3. What is the best movie you've ever seen? 4. What was the happiest day of your life? 5. What is the craziest thing you've ever done? 6. What is the most expensive thing you've ever bought? 7. What is the best restaurant in your city? 8. What is the most exciting place you've ever been? 9. Who is the most interesting person you've ever met?

Page 6.

A. 1. harder / the hardest 2. more carefully / the most carefully 3. earlier / the earliest 4. more quickly / most quickly 5. more slowly / most slowly 6. more beautifully / most beautifully 7. better / best 8. more clearly / most clearly 9. later / latest 10. further / furthest 11. worse / worst 12. more fluently / most fluently

B. 1. more carefully 2. harder / the hardest 3. the most beautifully 4. more clearly 5. earlier 6. the earliest 7. faster 8. better / the best 9. the most 10. later

Page 8.

1. the fanciest 2. the most gracefully 3. louder 4. heavier 5. the coldest 6. more fluently / the most fluently 7. shortest / shorter 8. the fastest 9. the most convenient 10. earlier 11. faster 12. slower 13. the hardest 14. the most interesting 15. more carefully 16. more often 17. the most expensive 18. the worst 19. more beautifully / the most beautiful

Comparatives and Superlatives of Adjectives

<i>Answers</i>					
Adjective	Comparative	Superlative	Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
1. tall	taller	the tallest	22. far	farther	the farthest
2. cheap	cheaper	the cheapest	23. bad	worse	the worst
3. expensive	more expensive	the most expensive	24. fat	fatter	the fattest
4. good	better	the best	25. interesting	more interesting	the most interesting
5. lazy	lazier	the laziest	26. narrow	narrower	the narrowest
6. pretty	prettier	the prettiest	27. safe	safer	the safest
7. beautiful	more beautiful	the most beautiful	28. dangerous	more dangerous	the most dangerous
8. difficult	more difficult	the most difficult	29. messy	messier	the messiest
9. boring	more boring	the most boring	30. handsome	more handsome	the most handsome
10. shy	shyer	the shiest	31. attractive	more attractive	the most attractive
11. happy	happier	the happiest	32. delicious	more delicious	the most delicious
12. short	shorter	the shortest	33. useful	more useful	the most useful
13. famous	more famous	the most famous	34. easy	easier	the easiest
14. comfortable	more comfortable	the most comfortable	35. lucky	luckier	the luckiest
15. ugly	uglier	the ugliest	36. quiet	quieter	the quietest
16. warm	warmer	the warmest	37. noisy	noisier	the noisiest
17. long	longer	the longest	38. modern	more modern	the most modern
18. intelligent	more intelligent	the most intelligent	39. patient	more patient	the most patient
19. wide	wider	the widest	40. convenient	more convenient	the most convenient
20. thick	thicker	the thickest	41. accurate	more accurate	the most accurate
21. smart	smarter	the smartest			

GERUNDS and INFINITIVES

GERUND / El Gerundio

El Gerundio es la forma verbal terminada en **-ing** que, además de utilizarse para la formación de los tiempos continuos, también tiene otros usos en inglés:

A) Como complemento directo de determinados verbos.

*I **enjoy** swimming.*

*We **discussed** holding the wedding at home.*

Verbos más frecuentes que van seguidos de GERUNDIO:

ADMIT ADVISE ANTICIPATE APPRECIATE AVOID CAN'T HELP COMPLETE
CONSIDER DELAY **DENY** **DETEST** DISCUSS **DISLIKE** **ENJOY** FINISH FORGET
HATE IMAGINE KEEP **LIKE** **LOVE** MENTION MIND **MISS** POSTPONE
PRACTISE **PREFER** QUIT RECALL RECOLLECT RECOMMEND REGRET
REMEMBER RESENT RESIST RISK STOP **SUGGEST** TOLERATE UNDERSTAND

B) Detrás de las siguientes expresiones o formas verbales:

*I **can't help** laughing at him. (No puedo evitar reirme de él).*

*I **can't stand** waiting in queues. (No soporto hacer cola).*

***There's / It's no use** crying over spilt milk. (No merece la pena ... [A lo hecho, pecho]).*

*That car **isn't worth** buying. (No merece la pena comprar el coche).*

*Helen **isn't used to** driving on the left. (Helena no está acostumbrada a conducir por la derecha).*

*David couldn't **get used to** living in a city. (David no pudo acostumbrarse a vivir en una ciudad).*

*David has **given up** smoking. (David ha dejado de fumar).*

*Let's **go** swimming!. (GO + -ing = para actividades de recreo: ¡Vayamos a nadar!).*

*Your car **needs** cleaning. (NEED + -ing = sentido pasivo: Tu coche necesita ser limpiado).*

PREPOSICIÓN + GERUNDIO

Cuando una preposición va seguida de un verbo, éste normalmente se pondrá en gerundio.

*I look forward **to** seeing you again.*

*The apoligized **for** not paying the bill.*

*Lucy doesn't like his way **of** thinking.*

GERUNDIO COMO SUJETO

Cuando un verbo funciona como el sujeto de la oración (hablamos de acciones o hechos en general) dicho verbo se pondrá en gerundio.

***Breaking up** a relationship is never easy.*

***Smoking** is not allowed.*

VERBOS + GERUNDIO O INFINITIVO SIN CAMBIO DE SIGNIFICADO

Algunos verbos pueden ir seguidos tanto por un GERUNDIO como por un INFINITIVO SIN QUE CAMBIE SU SIGNIFICADO. Si el verbo está en tiempo continuo, se suele preferir el infinitivo. He aquí una lista de estos verbos:

ADVISE ALLOW BEGIN CEASE CONTINUE HATE INTEND
LIKE LOVE PERMIT PREFER RECOMMEND START

1.- Con **advise, allow, permit** y **recommend**:

a) Si el pronombre o nombre se menciona, se pone el INFINITIVO.
*I advised **him to sell** the car.*

b) Si no hay pronombre, debe usarse el GERUNDIO.
*I advised **selling** the car.*

2.- Después de **intend**, es más frecuente poner un INFINITIVO.
*I **intend to move** house in the summer.*

3.- Es más frecuente emplear el INFINITIVO después de **prefer** cuando tenemos una ocasión particular en mente.
*I **prefer to go** to the pool today.*

VERBOS + GERUNDIO or INFINITIVO CON CAMBIO DE SIGNIFICADO.

Algunos verbos pueden ir seguidos tanto por un GERUNDIO como por un INFINITIVO, pero dependiendo de ello cambian de significado.

STOP

*He **stopped smoking** last year. (Dejó de fumar)*
*He **stopped to smoke** a cigarette. (Interrumpió la acción que estaba haciendo para fumar)*

REGRET

*I **regret wasting** so much money. (REGRET = 2ª acción)*
*I **regret to tell** you that he has died. (REGRET = 1ª acción)*

REMEMBER

*I **remember taking** the suitcase. (REMEMBER = 2ª acción)*
*I **remembered to take** the suitcase. (REMEMBER = 1ª acción)*

FORGET

*I will never **forget visiting** the Tower of London. (FORGET = 2ª acción)*
*David always **forgets to visit** his grandmother. (FORGET = 1ª acción)*

INFINITIVE / El Infinitivo

El infinitivo es la forma verbal que va precedida de **to**.

A) VERBO + INFINITIVO CON “TO”

Los siguientes verbos suelen ir seguidos de **infinitivo con “to”**:

AFFORD **AGREE** **APPEAR** ARRANGE ASK BEG CARE **CHOOSE** CLAIM
CONSENT **DECIDE** DEMAND DESERVE **EXPECT** FAIL FORGET HESITATE
HELP **HOPE** **LEARN** MANAGE MEAN NEED OFFER **PLAN** **PERSUADE**
PREPARE PRETEND **PROMISE** **REFUSE** REGRET REMEMBER **SEEM** STRUGGLE
SWEAR THREATEN VOLUNTEER WAIT **WANT** **WISH**

Angela **promised** to arrive on time.
They **decided** not to take the car.

B) DETRÁS DE ADJETIVOS Y ADVERBIOS.

También utilizamos el infinitivo con “to” detrás de adjetivos y adverbios:

This text is **difficult** to understand.
The car went too **fast** to see the traffic lights.

C) CON VERBOS QUE LLEVAN COMPLEMENTO DIRECTO DE PERSONA

Estos verbos llevan un nombre o pronombre entre el primer verbo y el infinitivo.

Alan told **me** to call him at 7.00.
I permitted **my daughter** to take the car.
Harry warned **me** not to drive too fast.
She wants **you** to do the shopping.

Verbos de este tipo son:

ADVISE ALLOW **ASK** BEG CAUSE CHALLENGE CONVINCED DARE ENABLE
ENCOURAGE EXPECT FORBID FORCE HIRE INSTRUCT **INVITE** NEED **ORDER**
PERMIT PERSUADE REMIND REQUIRE **TEACH** **TELL** URGE **WANT** **WARN**

Algunos verbos con partícula (phrasal verbs) y ciertas expresiones van seguidas de **infinitivo con “to”**:

The whole affair **turned out** to be an embarrassment.
We **are about** to leave, so hurry up.
Helen **made up** her mind to buy a house.
It's **up to** you to decide.

VERBOS + INFINITIVO SIN "TO".

Los verbos que van seguidos de un INFINITIVO sin TO incluyen:

1.- Los Modales y Semimodales: **can, could, must, have to**, etc ...

*We **should** leave soon.*
*The boys will **have to** travel on Tuesday.*

2.- Los verbos auxiliares: **do, does did...**

***Did** you see the accident ?.*
*He **doesn't** need your help.*

3.- **Let / Make** + objeto + infinitivo sin "to".

Esta construcción es frecuente en Inglés. Cuando ponemos en pasiva una frase con MAKE, hemos de ponerle TO.

*They **made** the pupil do his homework.*
*The pupil **was made** to do his homework.*

El verbo LET no tiene pasiva. En su lugar se pone TO BE ALLOWED TO.

*I **let** my son borrow the car.*
*My son **was allowed** to borrow the car.*

4.- Los verbos de sentido. Estos verbos pueden ir con GERUNDIO, lo que implica que la acción está incompleta, o da la idea de "mientras". Sin embargo, si van seguidos de INFINITIVO sin TO implica que vimos u oímos una acción completa.

*I **saw** the plane fall. (lo vi en el suelo)*
*I **saw** the plane falling. (lo vi mientras estaba cayendo, pero no vi donde cayó)*

Los verbos de sentido incluyen: SEE, HEAR, WATCH, NOTICE y FEEL.

NOTA: El verbo SMELL se suele emplear sólo en GERUNDIO.

*I could **smell** something burning.*

VERBS FOLLOWED BY INFINITIVE / GERUND

VERBS FOLLOWED BY -ING FORM	VERBS FOLLOWED BY INFINITIVE WITH TO	VERBS FOLLOWED BY INFINITIVE OR GERUND WITH SIMILAR MEANINGS
<i>Everyone enjoys listening to music.</i>	<i>We expected to win the game.</i>	<i>It continued raining all day. It continued to rain all day.</i>
admit / avoid / dislike / enjoy / fancy / feel like / finish / imagine / love / mention / mind / miss / practise / suggest	afford / agree / appear / attempt / begin / decide / demand / expect / fail / hope / intend / learn / manage / offer / plan / pretend / promise / refuse / seem / want / would like	Begin / continue / hate / *like / *love / prefer / start *More commonly followed by -ING form.

SOME VERBS ARE FOLLOWED BY THE -ING OR THE INFINITIVE BUT WITH A DIFFERENT MEANING:

	VERB + INFINITIVE	VERB + GERUND
REMEMBER	<i>Did you remember to bring your shoes?</i> (an action you have to do)	<i>I remember feeling very tired at the end of the race.</i> (a memory of something in the past)
FORGET	<i>Don't forget to bring your tennis racket.</i> (an action you have to do)	<i>I'll never forget winning my first tennis championship.</i> (a memory of something in the past)
REGRET	<i>I regret to tell you the race has been cancelled.</i> (regret + to say/to tell/to inform means that you are sorry to give that information)	<i>I regret not training harder before the race.</i> (I'm sorry I didn't do this)
TRY	<i>I'm running every day because I'm trying to get fit.</i> (my aim is to get fit)	<i>If you want to get fit, why don't you try swimming?</i> (swimming is a way to achieve what you want)
STOP	<i>During the race, he stopped to drink some water.</i> (in order to drink some water)	<i>When he realised he couldn't win, he stopped running.</i> (he didn't continue)

Using Gerunds and Infinitives

Gerunds and infinitives are verb forms that can take the place of a noun in a sentence. The following guidelines and lists will help you figure out whether a gerund or infinitive is needed.

1. Following a verb (*gerund or infinitive*)

Both gerunds and infinitives can replace a noun as the object of a verb. Whether you use a gerund or an infinitive depends on the main verb in the sentence. Consult the lists below to find out which form to use following which verbs.

I *expect* **to have** the report done by Friday. [INFINITIVE]
I *anticipate* **having** the report done by Friday. [GERUND]

Some common verbs followed by a gerund

(note that phrasal verbs, marked here with *, always fall into this category):

<i>acknowledge</i>	She <i>acknowledged</i> receiving assistance.
* <i>accuse of</i>	He <i>was accused of</i> smuggling contraband goods.
<i>admit</i>	They <i>admitted</i> falsifying the data.
<i>advise</i>	The author <i>advises</i> undertaking further study.
<i>anticipate</i>	He <i>anticipates</i> having trouble with his supervisor.
<i>appreciate</i>	I <i>appreciated</i> having a chance to read your draft.
<i>avoid</i>	He <i>avoided</i> answering my question.
<i>complete</i>	I finally <i>completed</i> writing my thesis.
<i>consider</i>	They will <i>consider</i> granting you money.
<i>defer</i>	She <i>deferred</i> writing her report.
<i>delay</i>	We <i>delayed</i> reporting the results until we were sure.
<i>deny</i>	They <i>denied</i> copying the information.
<i>discuss</i>	They <i>discussed</i> running the experiments again.
<i>entail</i>	This review procedure <i>entails</i> repeating the test.
* <i>look after</i>	He will <i>look after</i> mailing the tickets.
* <i>insist on</i>	He <i>insisted on</i> proofreading the article again.
<i>involve</i>	This procedure <i>involves</i> testing each sample twice.
<i>justify</i>	My results <i>justify</i> taking drastic action.
<i>mention</i>	The author <i>mentions</i> seeing this event.
* <i>plan on</i>	They had <i>planned on</i> attending the conference.
<i>postpone</i>	The committee has <i>postponed</i> writing the report.
<i>recall</i>	I cannot <i>recall</i> getting those results before.
<i>resent</i>	He <i>resented</i> spending so much time on the project.
<i>recommend</i>	She <i>recommends</i> reading Marx.
<i>resist</i>	The writer <i>resists</i> giving any easy answers.
<i>risk</i>	She <i>risks</i> losing her viewing time.
<i>sanction</i>	They will not <i>sanction</i> copying without permission.
<i>suggest</i>	I <i>suggest</i> repeating the experiment.
* <i>take care of</i>	He will <i>take care of</i> sending it to you.
<i>tolerate</i>	She can't <i>tolerate</i> waiting for results.

Some common verbs followed by an infinitive:

<i>afford</i>	We cannot <i>afford to hesitate</i> .
<i>agree</i>	The professors <i>agreed to disagree</i> .
<i>appear</i>	The results <i>appear to support</i> your theory.
<i>arrange</i>	They had <i>arranged to meet</i> at noon.
<i>beg</i>	I <i>beg to differ</i> with you.
<i>care</i>	Would you <i>care to respond</i> ?
<i>claim</i>	She <i>claims to have</i> new data.
<i>consent</i>	Will you <i>consent to run</i> for office?
<i>decide</i>	When did he <i>decide to withdraw</i> ?
<i>demand</i>	I <i>demand to see</i> the results of the survey.
<i>deserve</i>	She <i>deserves to have</i> a fair hearing.
<i>expect</i>	The committee <i>expects to decide</i> by tomorrow.
<i>fail</i>	The trial <i>failed to confirm</i> his hypothesis.
<i>hesitate</i>	I <i>hesitate to try</i> the experiment again.
<i>hope</i>	What do you <i>hope to accomplish</i> ?
<i>learn</i>	We have <i>learned to proceed</i> with caution.
<i>manage</i>	How did she <i>manage to find</i> the solution?
<i>neglect</i>	The author <i>neglected to provide</i> an index.
<i>need</i>	Do we <i>need to find</i> new subjects?
<i>offer</i>	We could offer <i>to change</i> the time of the meeting.
<i>plan</i>	They had <i>planned to attend</i> the conference.
<i>prepare</i>	He was not <i>prepared to give</i> a lecture.
<i>pretend</i>	I do not <i>pretend to know</i> the answer.
<i>promise</i>	They <i>promise to demonstrate</i> the new equipment.
<i>refuse</i>	She <i>refused to cooperate</i> any longer.
<i>seem</i>	Something <i>seems to be</i> wrong with your design.
<i>struggle</i>	We <i>struggled to understand</i> her point of view.
<i>swear</i>	He <i>swears to tell</i> the truth.
<i>threaten</i>	The team <i>threatened to stop</i> their research.
<i>volunteer</i>	Will you <i>volunteer to lead</i> the group?
<i>wait</i>	We could not <i>wait to hear</i> the outcome.
<i>want</i>	She did not <i>want to go</i> first.
<i>wish</i>	Do you <i>wish to participate</i> ?

2. Following a preposition (*gerund only*)

Gerunds can follow a preposition; infinitives cannot.

Can you touch your toes *without bending* your knees?

He was fined *for driving* over the speed limit.

She got the money *by selling* the car.

A corkscrew is a tool *for taking* corks out of bottles.

Note: Take care not to confuse the preposition “to” with an infinitive form, or with an auxiliary form such as *have to*, *used to*, *going to*.

He went back <i>to writing</i> his paper.	[PREPOSITION + GERUND]
I <i>used to live</i> in Mexico.	[AUXILIARY + VERB]
I <i>want to go</i> home.	[VERB + INFINITIVE]

3. Following an indirect object (*infinitive only*)

Some verbs are followed by a pronoun or noun referring to a person, and then an infinitive. Gerunds cannot be used in this position.

Some common verbs followed by an indirect object plus an infinitive:

<i>ask</i>	I must <i>ask</i> you to reconsider your statement.
<i>beg</i>	They <i>begged</i> her to stay for another term.
<i>cause</i>	His findings <i>caused</i> him to investigate further.
<i>challenge</i>	Wilkins <i>challenged</i> Watson to continue the research.
<i>convince</i>	Can we <i>convince</i> them to fund our study?
<i>encourage</i>	She <i>encouraged</i> him to look beyond the obvious.
<i>expect</i>	They did not <i>expect</i> us to win an award.
<i>forbid</i>	The author <i>forbade</i> me to change his wording.
<i>force</i>	They cannot <i>force</i> her to reveal her sources.
<i>hire</i>	Did the department <i>hire</i> him to teach the new course?
<i>instruct</i>	I will <i>instruct</i> her to prepare a handout.
<i>invite</i>	We <i>invite</i> you to attend the ceremony.
<i>need</i>	They <i>need</i> her to show the slides.
<i>order</i>	He <i>ordered</i> the group to leave the building.
<i>persuade</i>	Can we <i>persuade</i> you to contribute again?
<i>remind</i>	Please <i>remind</i> him to check the references.
<i>require</i>	They will <i>require</i> you to submit an outline.
<i>teach</i>	We should <i>teach</i> them to follow standard procedures.
<i>tell</i>	Did she <i>tell</i> him to make three copies?
<i>urge</i>	I <i>urge</i> you to read the instructions before you begin.
<i>want</i>	I do not <i>want</i> you to have an accident.
<i>warn</i>	Why didn't they <i>warn</i> me to turn down the heat?

Prepared for use at the University of Toronto by Martine Johnson, International Student Centre,
and revised 2004 by Rebecca Smollett.

Over 50 other files giving advice on university writing are available at www.writing.utoronto.ca



Name: _____

Infinitives and Gerunds

1 Choose the correct answer.

- 1 We couldn't smoke because there was a "No *to smoke / smoking*" sign on the wall.
- 2 They told me not *to turn / turning* on the TV.
- 3 He was really pleased *to see / seeing* me again.
- 4 Would you mind *parking / to park* the car for me?
- 5 Laura is very good at *to tell / telling* jokes.
- 6 She can't help *to laugh / laughing* when she remembers what happened.
- 7 Yesterday I didn't feel like *going / to go* to the gym.
- 8 We would all like *increasing / to increase* our brain power.
- 9 I look forward to *meeting / meet* you again soon.
- 10 When we were younger, we were used to *walk / walking* to school.

2 Put the verbs in brackets into the infinitive or gerund.

- 1 I am sorry, but I think _____ (learn) a foreign language is very difficult.
- 2 My brother was glad _____ (get over) his illness.
- 3 His mother suggested _____ (take) a taxi.
- 4 Carol was afraid of _____ (talk) in front of the class.
- 5 We can't park here. Look at the "No _____" (park) sign there.
- 6 I like _____ (eat) vegetables.
- 7 We asked them _____ (not / be) so rude with everybody.
- 8 I was surprised _____ (see) that she was interested in _____ (read) my book.
- 9 I would like _____ (eat) a little later today.
- 10 Would you mind _____ (speak) a little louder? I can't hear you.

3 We can use a *to* infinitive or *-ing* form after the following verbs and the meaning changes. Write two sentences for each verb, using both forms. Make sure the context of the sentence explains the difference.

- 1 *remember + to* infinitive: _____
- 2 *remember + -ing*: _____
- 3 *stop + to* infinitive: _____
- 4 *stop + -ing*: _____
- 5 *regret + to* infinitive: _____
- 6 *regret + -ing*: _____

now everybody hates me.
6 I regret telling all those lies.
haven't passed the exam.
5 I regret to tell you that you
when I do.
because nobody is grateful
4 I've stopped helping people,
car, and he was very grateful.
pedestrian who was hit by the
3 I stopped to help the
years ago.
2 I remembered visiting him
when I was in town.
1 I remembered to visit him

3 Model answers:

- 10 speaking
- 9 to eat
- 8 to see; reading
- 7 not to be
- 6 eating
- 5 parking
- 4 talking
- 3 taking
- 2 to get over
- 2 1 learning
- 10 walking
- 9 meeting
- 8 to increase
- 7 going
- 6 laughing
- 5 telling
- 4 parking
- 3 to see
- 2 to turn
- 1 smoking

Infinitives and Gerunds

KEY

Gerund or Infinitive – Fill in the correct form.

1. Mary enjoys _____ to music. (*listen*)
2. I don't mind _____ the washing up. (*do*)
3. Irregular verbs are not easy _____. (*remember*)
4. Mathew is really good at _____. (*cook*)
5. She waited _____ a movie ticket. (*buy*)
6. The doctor encouraged his patients _____ healthy food. (*eat*)
7. My flat is easy _____. (*find*)
8. She is interested in _____ a doctor. (*become*)
9. He is saving money _____ a new car. (*buy*)
10. When I met her I couldn't help _____ her. (*hug*)
11. My favorite hobby is _____. (*cook*)
12. My father helped me _____ my homework. (*do*)
13. I'm sick of _____ hamburgers every day. (*eat*)
14. It is important _____ the net for more information. (*surf*)
15. She advised me _____ a doctor as soon as possible. (*see*)
16. I don't feel like _____ English today. (*study*)
17. Isabel got Mike _____ her car (*wash*)
18. _____ sport every day is good for your health. (*do*)
19. At last they decided _____ the apartment. (*rent*)
20. I pretended _____ asleep. (*be*)
21. Sheila stopped _____ hello to her friends. (*say*)
22. It's no use _____ over spilt milk. (*cry*)
23. The following questions are easy _____. (*answer*)
24. She told us where _____ the necessary material. (*find*)
25. Would you mind _____ this letter for me? (*post*)
26. They suggested _____ by bus. (*travel*)
27. We plan _____ to Europe this summer (*go*)
28. It was hard for her _____ smoking. (*quit*)
29. We were all happy about _____ the New Year in Vienna. (*celebrate*)
30. It seems difficult _____ everything about the topic. (*know*)
31. Just avoid _____ unnecessary mistakes. (*make*)
32. Can you imagine _____ my car before we leave? (*finish*)
33. We are used _____ up early in the morning. (*get*)
34. She enjoys _____. (*paint*)
35. I forgot _____ the door when I left. (*lock*)
36. I regret _____ you that your application was rejected. (*inform*)
37. We intend _____ you next spring. (*visit*)
38. I decided _____ more often. (*exercise*)
39. Mary keeps _____ about her problems. (*talk*)
40. Ireland doesn't allow _____ in bars. (*smoke*)
41. Nancy seemed _____ disappointed. (*be*)
42. I can't bear _____ so much responsibility. (*have*)
43. She is fond of _____ picnics. (*have*)
44. She promised _____ smoking. (*stop*)
45. They urge their citizens _____ more waste. (*recycle*)
46. John is thinking about _____ abroad. (*study*)
47. She considered _____ to New York. (*move*)
48. The aquarium needs _____. (*clean*)
49. Tom agrees _____ me. (*help*)
50. She warned him _____ late. (*not be*)

Gerund or Infinitive – Fill in the correct form.

1. Mary enjoys listening to music.
2. I don't mind doing the washing up.
3. Irregular verbs are not easy to remember.
4. Mathew is really good at cooking.
5. She waited to buy a movie ticket.
6. The doctor encouraged his patients to eat healthy food.
7. My flat is easy to find.
8. She is interested in becoming a doctor.
9. He is saving money to buy a new car.
10. When I met her I couldn't help hugging her.
11. My favorite hobby is cooking.
12. My father helped me do my homework.
13. I'm sick of eating hamburgers every day.
14. It is important to surf the net for more information.
15. She advised me to see a doctor as soon as possible.
16. I don't feel like studying English today.
17. Isabel got Mike to wash her car
18. Doing sport every day is good for your health.
19. At last they decided to rent the apartment.
20. I pretended to be asleep.
21. Sheila stopped to say hello to her friends.
22. It's no use crying over spilt milk.
23. The following questions are easy to answer.
24. She told us where to find the necessary material.
25. Would you mind posting this letter for me?
26. They suggested travelling by bus.
27. We plan to go to Europe this summer
28. It was hard for her to quit smoking.
29. WE were all happy about celebrating the New Year in Vienna.
30. It seems difficult to know everything about the topic.
31. Jus avoid making unnecessary mistakes.
32. Can you imagine finishing my car before we leave?
33. We are used to getting up early in the morning.
34. She enjoys painting.
35. I forgot to lock the door when I left.
36. I regret to inform you that your application was rejected.
37. We intend to visit you next spring.
38. I decided to exercise more often.
39. Mary keeps talking about her problems.
40. Ireland doesn't allow smoking in bars.
41. Nancy seemed to be disappointed.
42. I can't bear having so much responsibility.
43. She is fond of having picnics.
44. She promised to stop smoking.
45. They urge their citizens to recycle more waste.
46. John is thinking about studying abroad.
47. She considered moving to New York.
48. The aquarium needs cleaning.
49. Tom agrees to help me.
50. She warned him not to be late.

Gerund or Infinitive – Fill in the correct form.

1. I can't imagine _____ at home. (**work**)
2. We have decided against _____ a new car. (**buy**)
3. She seems _____ her new job. (**like**)
4. The students hope _____ the exam. (**pass**)
5. He won't go by plane. He is afraid of _____. (**fly**)
6. I am lazy. I don't feel like _____ any work. (**do**)
7. Remember _____ the letter. Otherwise they won't get it by Saturday.
(**post**)
8. Have you ever learned how _____ such a plane? (**fly**)
9. They were too lazy _____ out with us. (**go**)
10. I always enjoy _____ to my grandfather. He always tells me great stories.
(**talk**)
11. I'm very interested in _____ French. (**learn**)
12. My pen friend is coming next Friday. I'm really looking forward _____ her.
(**meet**)
13. Don't you mind _____ away from your family for such a long time? (**be**)
14. The children promised _____ back by nine. (**be**)
15. I wanted to go alone but Joe insisted on _____ with me. (**come**)
16. Tom offered _____ me home. (**bring**)
17. Why not _____ a weekend in Scotland? (**spend**)
18. I'm sorry I can't come to your party but thank you for _____ me. (**invite**)
19. Our neighbors apologized for _____ such noise. (**make**)
20. Paris is always worth _____ to. (**travel**)
21. I'm sure I gave him back the money. I remember _____ it back to him.
(**give**)
22. She eventually managed _____ her bike. (**repair**)
23. Would you like _____ a cup of coffee? (**drink**)
24. There's no point in _____ the matter. He has already made his decision.
(**discuss**)
25. I prefer _____ to skiing. (**snowboard**)
26. Do you mind _____ Anita to the doctor? (**bring**)
27. It is difficult _____ him. (**understand**)
28. We had difficulties _____ your house. (**find**)
29. They decided _____ Tennis in the afternoon. (**play**)
30. We expect him _____ us on Sunday. (**join**)

Gerund or Infinitive – Fill in the correct form.

1. I can't imagine **working** at home.
2. We have decided against **buying** a new car.
3. She seems **to like** her new job.
4. The students hope **to pass** the exam.
5. He won't go by plane. He is afraid of **flying**.
6. I am lazy. I don't feel like **doing** any work.
7. Remember **to post** the letter. Otherwise they won't get it by Saturday.
8. Have you ever learned how **to fly** such a plane?
9. They were too lazy **to go** out with us.
10. I always enjoy **talking** to my grandfather. He always tells me great stories.
11. I'm very interested in **learning** French.
12. My pen friend is coming next Friday. I'm really looking forward **to meeting** her.
13. Don't you mind **being** away from your family for such a long time?
14. The children promised **to be** back by nine.
15. I wanted **to go** alone but Joe insisted on **coming** with me.
16. Tom offered **to bring** me home.
17. Why not **spend** a weekend in Scotland?
18. I'm sorry I can't come to your party but thank you for **inviting** me.
19. Our neighbors apologized for **making** such noise.
20. Paris is always worth **travelling** to.
21. I'm sure I gave him back the money. I remember **giving** it back to him.
22. She eventually managed **to repair** her bike.
23. Would you like **to drink** a cup of coffee?
24. There's no point in **discussing** the matter. He has already made his decision.
25. I prefer **snowboarding** to skiing.
26. Do you mind **bringing** Anita to the doctor?
27. It is difficult **to understand** him.
28. We had difficulties **finding** your house.
29. They decided **to play** Tennis in the afternoon.
30. We expect him **to join** us on Sunday.

Gerund or Infinitive – Fill in the correct form.

1. _____ is not allowed here. (**fish**)
2. I heard the TV set _____ . (**explode**)
3. She appeared _____ very nervous. (**be**)
4. I keep _____ you - it was an accident. (**tell**)
5. Jack is good at _____ ceilings. (**paint**)
6. She wondered who _____ . (**ask**)
7. It is difficult _____ him. (**understand**)
8. She did not know what _____ from them. (**expect**)
9. My wife warned us _____ the table. (**not touch**)
10. He refused _____ me what all the fuss was about. (**tell**)
11. There's no sense in _____ him. He's not at home. (**visit**)
12. Elephants are known _____ a fantastic memory. (**have**)
13. I let her _____ on with her work. (**get**)
14. Colin had no idea of how _____ into the house. (**get**)
15. I'd rather _____ in bed than go to work. (**be**)
16. I crossed the road without _____ . (**look**)
17. We advised her _____ a year abroad. (**not spend**)
18. I always dreamed of _____ in a small house by the seaside. (**live**)
19. She made us _____ for hours. (**wait**)
20. She learned _____ pupils with respect. (**treat**)
21. I couldn't help _____ when I saw the bride in the beautiful white dress. (**cry**)
22. My uncle has given up _____ and now he prefers _____ .
(**smoke, eat**)
23. He wasn't used _____ on the right side of the road. (**drive**)
24. Would you rather _____ to a restaurant or eat at home. (**go**)
25. There was a fence _____ people from walking on the grass. (**walk**)
26. I agreed _____ him if he is in trouble. (**help**)
27. I'm too old _____ my habits now. (**change**)
28. Please stop _____ . You're making me nervous. (**whisper**)
29. He was silly enough _____ into the pond without _____ first.
(**dive, look**)
30. I enjoy _____ alone. I never feel lonely. (**be**)

Gerund or Infinitive – Fill in the correct form.

1. **Fishing** is not allowed here.
2. I heard the TV set **explode**.
3. She appeared **to be** very nervous.
4. I keep **telling** you - it was an accident.
5. Jack is good at **painting** ceilings.
6. She wondered who **to ask**.
7. It is difficult **to understand** him.
8. She did not know what **to expect** from them.
9. My wife warned us **not to touch** the table.
10. He refused **to tell** me what all the fuss was about.
11. There's no sense in **visiting** him. He's not at home.
12. Elephants are known **to have** a fantastic memory.
13. I let her **get** on with her work.
14. Colin had no idea of how **to get** into the house.
15. I'd rather **be** in bed than go to work.
16. I crossed the road without **looking**.
17. We advised her **not to spend** a year abroad.
18. I always dreamed of **living** in a small house by the seaside.
19. She made us **wait** for hours.
20. She learned **to treat** pupils with respect.
21. I couldn't help **crying** when I saw the bride in the beautiful white dress.
22. My uncle has given up **smoking** and now he prefers **eating**.
23. He wasn't used **to driving** on the right side of the road.
24. Would you rather **go** to a restaurant or eat at home.
25. There was a fence to stop people from **walking** on the grass.
26. I agreed **to help** him if he is in trouble.
27. I'm too old **to change** my habits now.
28. Please stop **whispering**. You're making me nervous.
29. He was sill enough **to dive** into the pond without **looking** first.
30. I enjoy **being** alone. I never feel lonely.

Gerund or Infinitive – Fill in the correct form.

1. They are likely _____ up at any time. (**show**)
2. The man denied _____ the crime. (**commit**)
3. Their memories of _____ in Africa will stay with them forever. (**travel**)
4. He has always been afraid of _____. (**fly**)
5. _____ is good for your health. (**swim**)
6. Would you mind _____ me the sugar. (**pass**)
7. She promised _____ the report as soon as possible. (**read**)
8. I had a hard time _____ the situation to my husband. (**explain**)
9. She had some problems _____ without glasses. (**read**)
10. Paul gave up _____ five years ago. (**smoke**)
11. What about _____ to the zoo tomorrow? (**go**)
12. Barca _____ in winning the Spanish championship. (**succeed**)
13. They had fun _____. (**ski**)
14. My friend was happy _____ me at the party. (**see**)
15. He was ashamed _____ that he had lied. (**admit**)
16. It was very kind of you _____ me. (**help**)
17. She always wastes her time _____ bad books. (**read**)
18. We had no problem _____ from the airport to the train station. (**drive**)
19. She hadn't expected this task _____ so difficult. (**be**)
20. It's no use _____ a taxi. We'll be late anyway. (**take**)
21. Don't forget _____ the document as soon as you are finished. (**sign**)
22. She made me _____ like a real man. (**feel**)
23. _____ video games all the time is very boring. (**play**)
24. She is fond of _____ comics. (**read**)
25. Alvaro admitted _____ during the English test. (**cheat**)
26. The teacher reminded us _____ irregular verbs. (**learn**)
27. The boy refused _____ what his mother said. (**do**)
28. Brenda really hates _____. (**study**)
29. I used _____ basketball during my college years. (**play**)
30. How long does it take you _____ to the university? (**walk**)

Gerund or Infinitive – Fill in the correct form.

1. They are likely **to show** up at any time. (**show**)
2. The man denied **committing** the crime. (**commit**)
3. Their memories of **traveling** in Africa will stay with them forever. (**travel**)
4. He has always been afraid of **flying**. (**fly**)
5. **Swimming** is good for your health. (**swim**)
6. Would you mind **passing** me the sugar. (**pass**)
7. She promised **to read** the report as soon as possible. (**read**)
8. I had a hard time **explaining** the situation to my husband. (**explain**)
9. She had some problems **reading** without glasses. (**read**)
10. Paul gave up **smoking** five years ago. (**smoke**)
11. What about **going** to the zoo tomorrow? (**go**)
12. Barca **succeeding** in winning the Spanish championship. (**succeed**)
13. They had fun **skiing**. (**ski**)
14. My friend was happy **to see** me at the party. (**see**)
15. He was ashamed **to admit** that he had lied. (**admit**)
16. It was very kind of you **to help** me. (**help**)
17. She always wastes her time **reading** bad books. (**read**)
18. We had no problem **driving** from the airport to the train station. (**drive**)
19. She hadn't expected this task **to be** so difficult. (**be**)
20. It's no use **taking** a taxi. We'll be late anyway. (**take**)
21. Don't forget **to sign** the document as soon as you are finished. (**sign**)
22. She made me **feel** like a real man. (**feel**)
23. **Playing** video games all the time is very boring. (**play**)
24. She is fond **of reading** comics. (**read**)
25. Alvaro admitted **cheating** during the English test. (**cheat**)
26. The teacher reminded us **to learn** irregular verbs. (**learn**)
27. The boy refused **to do** what his mother said. (**do**)
28. Brenda really hates **studying**. (**study**)
29. I used **to play** basketball during my college years. (**play**)
30. How long does it take you **to walk** to the university? (**walk**)

Gerund or Infinitive – Fill in the correct form.

1. Don't let them _____ (**cross**) that dangerous road on their own.
2. What about _____ (**have**) a last drink ?
3. They accused me of _____ (**break**) the window.
4. They'd rather _____ (**go**) to Tuscany than to Ireland.
5. There was a very good reason for _____ (**not believe**) in what he said.
6. I don't know what _____ (**believe**) anymore.
7. Remember _____ (**phone**) Tom tomorrow - OK I won't forget.
8. The teacher watched the pupil _____ (**cheat**).
9. Why not _____ (**spend**) our holiday in Florida this year ?
10. She is always the last _____ (**arrive**)
11. Most teachers insist on their pupils _____ (**do**) the homework.
12. She has often made me _____ (**cry**).
13. I expect _____ (**hear**) from you by Monday.
14. It's no use _____ (**pretend**) _____ (**like**) her food.
15. How old were you when you learnt _____ (**drive**) ?
16. I don't mind _____ (**walk**) home but I'd rather _____ (**get**) a taxi.
17. I can't make a decision. I keep _____ (**change**) my mind.
18. We had to keep him from _____ (**fall**) off the cliff.
19. He had made his decision and refused _____ (**change**) his mind.
20. It was a good holiday. I enjoyed _____ (**be**) by the sea.
21. Did I really tell you I was unhappy? I don't remember _____ (**say**) that.
22. The water here is not very good. I'd avoid _____ (**drink**) it if I were you.
23. I pretended _____ (**be**) interested in the conversation.
24. I got up and looked out of the window _____ (**see**) what the weather was like.
25. I have a friend who claims _____ (**be**) able to speak 5 languages.
26. I like _____ (**think**) carefully about things before _____ (**make**) a decision.
27. Steve used _____ (**be**) a footballer. He had to stop _____ (**play**) because of an injury.
28. How do you _____ (**make**) this machine work ? - I'm not sure. Try _____ (**press**) the button and see what happens !
29. What do you advise me _____ ? (**do**)
30. They intend _____ a new house next year. (**buy**)

Gerund or Infinitive – Fill in the correct form.

1. Don't let them cross that dangerous road on their own.
2. What about having a last drink ?
3. They accused me of breaking the window.
4. They'd rather go to Tuscany than to Ireland.
5. There was a very good reason for not believing in what he said.
6. I don't know what to believe anymore.
7. Remember to phone Tom tomorrow - OK I won't forget.
8. The teacher watched the pupil cheat.
9. Why not spend our holiday in Florida this year ?
10. She is always the last to arrive
11. Most teachers insist on their pupils doing the homework.
12. She has often made me cry.
13. I expect to hear from you by Monday.
14. It's no use pretending to like her food.
15. How old were you when you learnt to drive ?
16. I don't mind waking home but I'd rather get a taxi.
17. I can't make a decision. I keep changing my mind.
18. We had to keep him from falling off the cliff.
19. He had made his decision and refused to change his mind.
20. It was a good holiday. I enjoyed being by the sea.
21. Did I really tell you I was unhappy? I don't remember saying that.
22. The water here is not very good. I'd avoid drinking it if I were you.
23. I pretended to be interested in the conversation.
24. I got up and looked out of the window to see what the weather was like.
25. I have a friend who claims to be able to speak 5 languages.
26. I like to think carefully about things before making a decision.
27. Steve used to be a footballer. He had to stop playing because of an injury.
28. How do you make this machine work ? - I'm not sure. Try pressing the button and see what happens !
29. What do you advise me to do ?
30. They intend to buy a new house next year.

Gerund or Infinitive – Fill in the correct form.

1. We encouraged her _____ (**succeed in**) _____ (**become**) a top player.
2. It's no good _____ (**force**) him to go with us.
3. I promised _____ (**care**) for the cat but I'm not much good at _____ (**babysit**).
4. The people thanked me for _____ (**offer**) _____ (**help**) them.
5. I begged her _____ (**not accuse**) me of _____ (**ruin**) her hairstyle by _____ (**try**) _____ (**kiss**) her.
6. It is not worth _____ (**help**) him _____ (**do**) the job.
7. I let him _____ (**choose**) between _____ (**fly**) and _____ (**take**) the train.
8. The film was really worth _____ (**see**) so we made Mary _____ (**go**) to the movies with us.
9. Her forced us _____ (**accept**) his offer by _____ (**raise**) it by 5 %.
10. Normally I enjoy _____ (**go**) out but today I'd prefer _____ (**stay**) indoors.
11. She promised _____ (**not object**) to his _____ (**smoke**).
12. They continued _____ (**eat**) after the interruption.
13. I am not in the habit of _____ (**smoke**) in the car.
14. Ann reminded me _____ (**finish**) my work on time.
15. He'd better _____ (**get**) used to _____ (**work**) harder.
16. I am capable of _____ (**stand**) on my head and _____ (**play**) the saxophone.
17. You'd better _____ (**start**) _____ (**dig**) the garden.
18. I expected someone _____ (**pick**) up these papers.
19. The Romans were quite happy about Hannibal _____ (**not attack**) Rome.
20. It was interesting _____ (**watch**) our cat _____ (**play**).
21. We have taught our children _____ (**wash**) their hands before _____ (**eat**).
22. _____ (**write**) letters is more boring than _____ (**phone**).
23. Jack decided _____ (**have**) a break from work.
24. I refused _____ (**speak**) with them.
25. We agreed _____ (**meet**) them at the airport.
26. There is no sense in _____ (**earn**) more money than you can _____ (**spend**).
27. They made us _____ (**leave**) the campsite after _____ (**make**) such a mess.
28. "Do you mind _____ (**work**) overtime ?," asked the boss
29. She has never known how _____ (**fry**) a steak.
30. The doctor made him _____ (**promise**) _____ (**reduce**) his _____ (**smoke**).

Gerund or Infinitive – Fill in the correct form.

1. We encouraged her to succeed in becoming a top player.
2. It's no good forcing him to go with us.
3. I promised to care for the cat but I'm not much good at babysitting.
4. The people thanked me for offering to help them.
5. I begged her not to accuse me of ruining her hairstyle by trying to kiss her.
6. It is not worth helping him do the job.
7. I let him choose between flying and taking the train.
8. The film was really worth seeing so we made Mary go to the movies with us.
9. Her forced us to accept his offer by raising it by 5 %.
10. Normally I enjoy going out but today I'd prefer staying/ to stay indoors.
11. She promised not to object to his smoking.
12. They continued to eat/ eating after the interruption.
13. I am not in the habit of smoking in the car.
14. Ann reminded me to finish my work on time.
15. He'd better get used to working harder.
16. I am capable of standing on my head and playing the saxophone.
17. You'd better start digging the garden.
18. I expected someone to pick up these papers.
19. The Romans were quite happy about Hannibal not attacking Rome.
20. It was interesting to watch our cat play.
21. We have taught our children to wash their hands before eating.
22. Writing letters is more boring than phoning.
23. Jack decided to have a break from work.
24. I refused to speak with them.
25. We agreed to meet them at the airport.
26. There is no sense in earning more money than you can spend.
27. They made us leave the campsite after making such a mess.
28. "Do you mind working overtime ?, " asked the boss
29. She has never known how to fry a steak.
30. The doctor made him promise to reduce his smoking.

Fill in the gerund with the correct preposition.

1. She is looking forward _____ his aunt in Chicago. (**visit**)
2. My wife is keen _____ pop songs. (**sing**)
3. His mother was excited _____ to Africa. (**go**)
4. The secretary carried _____ the letter. (**type**)
5. The construction workers worried _____ their jobs. (**lose**)
6. They tried to cope _____ in bad weather. (**work**)
7. The pupil is known _____ problems. (**cause**)
8. My wife apologized _____ late. (**be**)
9. The teacher always keeps _____ his timetable. (**complain**)
10. I insisted _____ the dog for a walk myself. (**take**)
11. The teenager is addicted _____ TV. (**watch**)
12. The actor is famous _____ crazy once in a while. (**be**)
13. The money will be devoted _____ the environment. (**protect**)
14. The au-pair succeeds _____ the children busy for some time. (**keep**)
15. He blamed me _____ the CD player. (**damage**)
16. George Clooney is proud _____ in humanitarian projects. (**take part**)
17. I'm tired _____ the same things over and over again. (**repeat**)
18. She said she was sorry _____ the vase. (**break**)
19. She is scared _____ alone at night. (**be**)
20. I'm very excited _____ tomorrow's game. (**attend**)
21. Jamie is sick _____ hamburgers all the time. (**eat**)
22. She ran away _____ behind her. (**look**)
23. The hikers are worried _____ enough water. (**not have**)
24. We are accustomed _____ our own bath. (**have**)
25. He has a habit _____ in the morning. (**smoke**)
26. The main disadvantage _____ is that planes are often delayed. (**fly**)
27. Her reputation _____ difficult games is well-known. (**win**)
28. My sister has got a talent _____ languages. (**learn**)
29. He took credit _____ the goal. (**score**)
30. She has a lot of experience _____ with mentally ill patients. (**deal**)

Fill in the gerund with the correct preposition.

1. She is looking forward **to visiting** his aunt in Chicago.
2. My wife is keen **on singing** pop songs.
3. His mother was excited **about going** to Africa.
4. The secretary carried **on typing** the letter.
5. The construction workers worried **about losing** their jobs.
6. They tried to cope **with working** in bad weather.
7. The pupil is known **for causing** problems.
8. My wife apologized **for being** late.
9. The teacher always keeps **complaining about** his timetable.
10. I insisted **on taking** the dog for a walk myself.
11. The teenager is addicted **to watching** TV.
12. The actor is famous **for being** crazy once in a while.
13. The money will be devoted **to protecting** the environment.
14. The au-pair succeeds **in keeping** the children busy for some time.
15. He blamed me **for damaging** the CD player.
16. George Clooney is proud **of taking part** in humanitarian projects.
17. I'm tired **of repeating** the same things over and over again.
18. She said she was sorry **about breaking** the vase.
19. She is scared **of being** alone at night.
20. I'm very excited **about attending** tomorrow's game.
21. Jamie is sick **of eating** hamburgers all the time.
22. She ran away **without looking** behind her.
23. The hikers are worried **about not having** enough water.
24. We are accustomed **to having** our own bath.
25. He has a habit **of smoking** in the morning.
26. The main disadvantage **of flying** is that planes are often delayed.
27. Her reputation **for winning** difficult games is well-known.
28. My sister has got a talent **for learning** languages.
29. He took credit **for scoring** the goal.
30. She has a lot of experience **in dealing** with mentally ill patients.

-ED AND -ING ADJECTIVES

Some participles and gerunds (like 'bored' or 'boring') can be used as adjectives. These are used in a slightly different way from normal adjectives. We usually use the past participle (*ending in -ed*) to talk about how someone feels:

*I was really **bored** during the flight (NOT: I was really boring during the flight).*

*She's **interested** in history (NOT: She's really interesting in history).*

*John's **frightened** of spiders (NOT: John's frightening of spiders).*

We usually use the present participle/gerund (*ending in -ing*) to talk about the person, thing, or situation which has caused the feeling:

*It was such a long, **boring** flight (so I was bored).*

*I read a really **interesting** book about history (so I was interested).*

*Many people find spiders **frightening** (so they're frightened when they see spiders).*



Be careful! 'I'm boring' is very different from 'I'm bored'! 'I'm boring' means I cause other people to be bored. This is not good! Here are some examples of when one person causes a feeling in another person:

*I was talking to such a **boring** guy at the party. He talked about himself for an hour!*

*She's a really **interesting** woman. She's lived all over the world.*

*My teacher at school was really **frightening**! He was always shouting at the students.*

These participle adjectives make their comparative by using 'more' (not -er) and their superlative by using 'most' (not -est):

*I was **more frightened** of dogs than spiders when I was a child.*

*That book is **more boring** than this one.*

*I think Dr Smith's lesson was **more interesting** than Dr Brown's.*

*For 24 hours on the flight to Australia, I was the **most bored** I've ever been.*

*I think this is the **most interesting** talk we've heard today.*

*It was the **most frightening** film that he'd ever seen.*

verbs + nouns + *-ed/-ing* adjectives list

Many English adjectives of emotion/feeling are formed from the *-ed / -ing* forms of verbs:

Positive

verb	-ed	-ing	noun
You _____ me!	I'm _____!	How _____!	What _____!
amaze	amazed	amazing	amazement
amuse	amused	amusing	amusement
astound	astounded	astounding	astonishment
bewitch	bewitched	bewitching	bewitchment
captivate	captivated	captivating	a captivation
challenge	challenged	challenging	a challenge
charm	charmed	charming	charm
comfort	comforted	comforting	comfort
concern	concerned	concerning	concern
convince	convinced	convincing	conviction
encourage	encouraged	encouraging	encouragement
enchant	enchanted	enchanting	enchantment
energize	energized	energizing	energy
entertain	entertained	entertaining	entertainment
enthrall	enthralled	enthraling	enthralment
excite	excited	exciting	excitement
exhaust	exhausted	exhausting	exhaustion
fascinate	fascinated	fascinating	fascination
flatter	flattered	flattering	flattery
fulfill	fulfilled	fulfilling	fulfillment
gratify	gratified	gratifying	gratification
gratify	gratified	gratifying	gratification
humiliate	humiliated	humiliating	humiliation
interest	interested	interesting	interest
intrigue	intrigued	intriguing	intrigue
move	moved	moving	
please	pleased	pleasing (pleasant)	a pleasure
relax	relaxed	relaxing	relaxation
relieve	relieved	relieving	a relief
satisfy	satisfied	satisfying	satisfaction
soothe	soothed	soothing	
surprise	surprised	surprising	a surprise
tempt	tempted	tempting	temptation
touch	touched	touching	
thrill	thrilled	thrilling	a thrill
titilate	titilated	titilating	titilation

**You're not
bored, you're
boring.**

Negative

verb	-ed	-ing	noun
You ____ me!	I'm ____!	How ____!	What ____!
aggravate	aggravated	aggravating	aggravation
alarm	alarmed	alarming	alarm
annoy	annoyed	annoying	annoyance
bewilder	bewildered	bewildering	bewilderment
bore	bored	boring	boredom
confound	confounded	confounding	
confuse	confused	confusing	confusion
depress	depressed	depressing	depression
devastate	devastated	devastating	devastation
disappoint	disappointed	disappointing	disappointment
discourage	discouraged	discouraging	discouragement
disgust	disgusted	disgusting	disgust
dishearten	disheartened	disheartening	disheartenment
dismay	dismayed	dismaying	dismay
displease	displeased	displeasing	displeasure
distress	distressed	distressing	distress
disturb	disturbed	disturbing	disturbance
embarrass	embarrassed	embarrassing	embarrassment
exasperate	exasperated	exasperating	exasperation
fatigue	fatigued	fatiguing	fatigue
frighten	frightened	frightening	fright
frustrate	frustrated	frustrating	frustration
horrify	horrified	horrifying	horror
insult	insulted	insulting	an insult
irritate	irritated	irritating	irritation
mortify	mortified	mortifying	mortification
mystify	mystified	mystifying	mystification
overwhelm	overwhelmed	overwhelming	overwhelmingness
perplex	perplexed	perplexing	perplexity
perturb	perturbed	perturbing	perturbation
puzzle	puzzled	puzzling	puzzlement
shock	shocked	shocking	a shock
sicken	sickened	sickening	sickness
terrify	terrified	terrifying	terror
threaten	threatened	threatening	a threat
tire	tired	tiring	tiredness
trouble	troubled	troubling	trouble
unnerve	unnerved	unnerving	
unsettle	unsettled	unsettling	unsettledness
upset	upset	upsetting	
vex	vexed	vexing	vexation

**You're not
bored, you're
boring.**

ED and ING adjectives



bored
excited
interested
embarrassed
frightened
worried

How you make others feel

-ING

boring
exciting
interesting
embarrassing
frightening
worrying

bored x boring

The teacher is bored. He thinks his job is horrible.
The teacher is really boring. No one likes his lessons.

frightened x frightening

The dog was frightened. It ran away.
The dog was frightening. It bit us.

interested x interesting

3 He is interested in English. He likes it very much.
He is interesting. Girls like talking to him.

excited x exciting

4 She was really excited about the wedding.
The wedding was exciting. A lot of great things happened there.

Participle Adjectives Short List

-ing adjectives	-ed adjectives
<p>alarming What an alarming noise!</p>	<p>alarmed I was alarmed by the loud bang.</p>
<p>amusing That TV programme is really amusing.</p>	<p>amused He was amused to hear his little son singing in the bath.</p>
<p>boring I've never seen such a boring film!</p>	<p>bored The students looked bored as the teacher talked and talked.</p>
<p>confusing I find these instructions very confusing! Could you come and help me?</p>	<p>confused I was confused, because I asked two people and they told me two different things.</p>
<p>depressing This weather is depressing! Is it ever going to stop raining?</p>	<p>depressed I was feeling depressed, so I stayed at home with hot chocolate and a good book.</p>
<p>embarrassing That is the most embarrassing photo! I look terrible!</p>	<p>embarrassed John was really embarrassed when he fell over in front of his new girlfriend.</p>
<p>exciting It's a really exciting book. I couldn't wait to find out what happened at the end.</p>	<p>excited I'm so excited! I'm going on holiday tomorrow!</p>
<p>exhausting I hate doing housework! It's exhausting!</p>	<p>exhausted Julie was so exhausted after her exams, she</p>

	spent the next three days sleeping.
fascinating The brain is fascinating, isn't it? It's amazing how much it can do.	fascinated Joan was fascinated by her grandmother's stories of life in the 1920s.
frightening What a frightening film! I don't want to walk home on my own now!	frightened I was really frightened of bees when I was little, but I don't mind them now.
frustrating It's frustrating when you want to say something in another language, but you don't know the word.	frustrated I tried all morning to send an email, but it wouldn't work. I was so frustrated!
interesting That was a very interesting book.	interested She's interested in animals, so she's thinking of studying to be a vet.
overwhelming I find London a bit overwhelming. It's so busy and noisy.	overwhelmed Julie felt overwhelmed. She'd moved house, got a new job and was learning to drive, all at the same time.
relaxing A nice hot bath is so relaxing after a long day.	relaxed She was so relaxed, sitting in front of the fire, that she didn't want to move.
satisfying John loves his new job as a teacher. He says it's very satisfying when he makes a student understand.	satisfied I'm very satisfied that I managed to order the meal in French.
shocking What a shocking crime! It's terrible.	shocked I was shocked when my co-worker admitted stealing some money.
surprising It's surprising how many people don't want to travel to another country.	surprised She was surprised when she arrived at her class and found the other students doing an

	exam. She'd thought it was a normal lesson.
terrifying What a terrifying dog! It's huge!	terrified My little son is terrified of the dark. We always leave a light on in his room at night.
thrilling What thrilling music! It's some of the most beautiful I've ever heard.	thrilled I was thrilled to win first prize in the competition.
tiring My job is really tiring. I often don't get home until 10pm.	tired David's too tired to come to the cinema tonight. He's going to go to bed early.

-ED and -ING Adjectives Exercise 1

Choose the correct adjective:

1. My nephew was (amusing / amused) by the clown.
2. It's so (frustrating / frustrated)! No matter how much I study I can't seem to remember this vocabulary.
3. This lesson is so (boring / bored)!
4. I'm feeling (depressed / depressing), so I'm going to go home, eat some chocolate, and go to bed early with a good book.
5. I thought her new idea was absolutely (fascinated / fascinating).
6. This maths problem is so (confusing / confused). Can you help me?
7. The teacher was really (amusing / amused) so the lesson passed quickly.
8. The journey was (exhausting / exhausted)! Twelve hours by bus.
9. The plane began to move in a rather (alarming / alarmed) way.
10. He was (frightening / frightened) when he saw the spider.
11. I was really (embarrassing / embarrassed) when I fell over in the street.
12. That film was so (depressing / depressed)! There was no happy ending for any of the characters.
13. I'm sorry, I can't come tonight. I'm completely (exhausting / exhausted).
14. We are going in a helicopter? How (exciting / excited)!
15. Don't show my baby photos to people, Mum! It's so (embarrassing / embarrassed)!
16. It's okay, it's only me. Don't be (alarming / alarmed).
17. My sister is so (exciting / excited) because she is going on holiday tomorrow.
18. I hate long flights, I'm always really (boring / bored).
19. She looked very (confusing / confused) when I told her we had to change the plan.
20. John was (fascinated / fascinating) by Mandarin when he first started learning languages. He decided to study more and now he can speak it fluently.

Answers:

1. My nephew was **amused** by the clown.
2. It's so **frustrating**! No matter how much I study I can't seem to remember this vocabulary.
3. This lesson is so **boring**!
4. I'm feeling **depressed**, so I'm going to go home, eat some chocolate, and go to bed early with a good book.
5. I thought her new idea was absolutely **fascinating**.
6. This maths problem is so **confusing**. Can you help me?
7. The teacher was really **amusing** so the lesson passed quickly.
8. The journey was **exhausting**! Twelve hours by bus.
9. The plane began to move in a rather **alarming** way.
10. He was **frightened** when he saw the spider.
11. I was really **embarrassed** when I fell over in the street.
12. That film was so **depressing**! There was no happy ending for any of the characters.
13. I'm sorry, I can't come tonight. I'm completely **exhausted**.
14. We are going in a helicopter? How **exciting**!
15. Don't show my baby photos to people, Mum! It's so **embarrassing**!
16. It's okay, it's only me. Don't be **alarmed**.
17. My sister is so **excited** because she is going on holiday tomorrow.
18. I hate long flights, I'm always really **bored**.
19. She looked very **confused** when I told her we had to change the plan.
20. John was **fascinated** by Mandarin when he first started learning languages. He decided to study more and now he can speak it fluently.

-ED and -ING Adjectives Exercise 2

Choose the correct adjective:

1. I am so (relaxing / relaxed) I don't want to move.
2. I find horror films really (frightening / frightened) and not at all fun to watch.
3. Sometimes I get really (frustrating / frustrated) when I can't express myself well in English.
4. We were stopped by a man with a knife who took our money. It was (terrifying / terrified).
5. The programme was really (interesting / interested).
6. She was (overwhelming / overwhelmed) when everyone cheered and we gave her presents.
7. If I feel stressed, I find taking a bath is often (relaxing / relaxed).
8. I am really (tiring / tired); I think I'll go to bed.
9. He's very (interesting / interested) in history.
10. The trip was (overwhelming / overwhelmed), with so many things to do and it was all so new.
11. She is never (satisfying / satisfied) with her work.
12. Cleaning is so (tiring / tired)! I think I'll have a rest!
13. She thought the ride on the rollercoaster was (thrilled / thrilling).
14. I was really (surprising / surprised) when I saw you. I had thought you were on holiday.
15. My grandmother was (shocking / shocked) by the man's bad language.
16. My niece is (terrifying / terrified) of dogs.
17. Thank you so much for the prize! I'm (thrilled / thrilling)!
18. My job is very (satisfying / satisfied), I love helping people.
19. The news was so (shocking / shocked) that she burst into tears.
20. My exam results were great! It's really (surprising / surprised) but good, of course

Answers:

1. I am so **relaxed** I don't want to move.
2. I find horror films really **frightening** and not at all fun to watch.
3. Sometimes I get really **frustrated** when I can't express myself well in English.
4. We were stopped by a man with a knife who took our money. It was **terrifying**.
5. The programme was really **interesting**.
6. She was **overwhelmed** when everyone cheered and we gave her presents.
7. If I feel stressed, I find taking a bath is often **relaxing**.
8. I am really **tired**; I think I'll go to bed.
9. He's very **interested** in history.
10. The trip was **overwhelming**, with so many things to do and it was all so new.
11. She is never **satisfied** with her work.
12. Cleaning is so **tiring**! I think I'll have a rest!
13. She thought the ride on the rollercoaster was **thrilling**.
14. I was really **surprised** when I saw you. I had thought you were on holiday.
15. My grandmother was **shocked** by the man's bad language.
16. My niece **is terrified** of dogs.
17. Thank you so much for the prize! I'm **thrilled**!
18. My job is very **satisfying**, I love helping people.
19. The news was so **shocking** that she burst into tears.
20. My exam results were great! It's really **surprising** but good, of course!

How are you feeling?

Exercise 1

Stand up please. You're going to hear a list of adjectives. Sit down when you hear an adjective that describes the way you're feeling.

Exercise 2

The exercise below contains some of the adjectives that you heard in activity 1. Match the numbers with the letters to complete the sentences like the example, and then complete the remaining sentence starters with endings of your own:

1) If you're feeling tired,	a. it's perfectly understandable as most people in your situation would be.
2) If you are thoughtful,	b. it's probably time for a change.
3) If you're really feeling so confident about your chances,	c. then your friends and family are very lucky.
4) If you're impulsive by nature,	d. take a few deep breaths to help you relax.
5) If you're feeling fed up with doing the same thing every day,	e. then you're clearly full of energy today.
6) If you truly have no regrets,	f. then you're a very lucky person.
7) If you're feeling nervous,	g. then you don't need any help from me.
8) If you're sociable by nature,	h. then you probably find it easy to make lots of friends.
9) If you're feeling active,	i. you should try counting to ten before you act.
10) If you're frightened of moving to another country,	j. you should have an early night.

1. If you're feeling depressed,
2. If you're feeling stressed,
3. If you're feeling light-hearted,
4. If you're feeling homesick,
5. If you're feeling on top of the world,

How are you feeling?

Exercise 3

The two adjectives INTERESTING AND INTERESTED cause a lot of problems. If this is an interesting lesson, then you will be interested in it. Complete the rule:

- Adjectives ending in describe a situation.
- Adjectives ending in describe someone's reaction to a situation.

Now complete the following sentences using an -ING and an -ED adjective with the same root from the following list. Use each word once only. The first one has been done for you.

amused	amusing	astonished	astonishing
depressed	depressing	disturbed	disturbing
entertained	entertaining	excited	exciting
exhausted	exhausting	frightened	frightening
refreshed	refreshing	satisfied	satisfying

1. It's depressing how little we really know about the universe and it makes me very depressed.
2. I'm when I get home in the evening as I find the job I do and it leaves me with no energy.
3. I find the fact that you've seen a ghost. and I'm absolutely by your story.
4. There's nothing more than a nice cup of tea. Once I'm I feel ready for anything.
5. I find the majority of horror films deeply and I'm also by the excessive use of violence.
6. As I'm of heights, I find travelling by plane extremely and I avoid it whenever I can.
7. I find travelling and I'm at the prospect of being able to work overseas.
8. The children wereby the clowns in the circus and some of the adults found their tricks too.
9. There's nothing more than a job well done. If I'm with what I've managed to do, I can then enjoy my free time even more.
10. When I watch television, it's because I want to be The most programmes for me are soaps.

How are you feeling?

Exercise 4

You've already seen some of the adjectives below in exercises 1, 2 and 3. Now choose one of them. Think about the last time something happened to make you feel this way, then tell the person sitting next to you about the occasion:

valued	light-hearted	on top of the world	enthusiastic
happy	interested	amused	astonished
depressed	disturbed	entertained	excited
exhausted	frightened	refreshed	satisfied
envious	impressed	disappointed	disgusted
embarrassed	confused	shocked	angry
relieved	guilty	fed up	nervous

Exercise 5

Work in pairs. Ask each other the questions below, and then report back with the information you find out about your partner to the rest of the class:

- How are you feeling at this particular moment about your life? Explain why. What could make you feel better about it?
- How do you feel about spending the rest of your life in this country?
- How do you feel at the end of a working day - satisfied or frustrated? Explain why.
- How do you feel about the current political situation in your country? Tell me about it.
- How are you feeling about the future - optimistic or pessimistic, and why?

How are you feeling?

Teacher's notes

Exercise 1

Read out the list of adjectives below. If anyone is still standing when you come to the end of the list, then ask them to produce an adjective of their own.

- likeable
- unique
- creative
- clever
- responsible
- optimistic
- useful
- active
- enthusiastic
- thoughtful
- light-hearted
- confident
- valued
- wide awake
- loveable
- exciting
- on top of the world
- happy
- intelligent
- interesting
- interested
- sociable
- artistic
- tolerant

Exercise 2

2-c / 3-g / 4-i / 5-b / 6-f / 7-d / 8-h / 9-e / 10-a

Note that 'thoughtful' can either describe someone who considers other people's needs and feelings (as in this exercise) or someone who thinks quietly and seriously about things, i.e. is pensive or reflective. You may also want to remind students of the construction of the zero conditional and point out that 'then' is optional.

Exercise 3

Adjectives ending in -ING describe a situation.

Adjectives ending in -ED describe someone's reaction to a situation.

1. depressing / depressed
2. exhausted / exhausting
3. astonishing / astonished*
4. refreshing / refreshed
5. disturbing* / disturbed
6. frightened / frightening
7. exciting / excited
8. amused / amusing
9. satisfying / satisfied
10. entertained / entertaining

*You may need to point out to students that the adverbs may help them find the right adjectives:

3. 'Absolutely' can only be used with strong/extreme adjectives, so 'frightened' cannot be used here.

5. Typically, 'deeply' collocates with 'offended' or 'disturbed'.

MODAL VERBS

Be, have and do can be auxiliaries and full verbs.

The most important **Modal Verbs** are: **can, could, may, must, should.**

We can play football.	Podemos jugar al fútbol.
We could play football.	Podríamos/pudimos jugar al fútbol.
We may play football.	Es posible que juguemos al fútbol.
We must play football.	Debemos jugar al fútbol.
We should play football.	Deberíamos jugar al fútbol.



Nota importante:

<p>They do not have an -s in the 3rd person singular of the Simple Present.</p> <p><i>No llevan -s en 3ª persona singular del presente.</i></p>	He can play football
<p>Questions and negatives are formed without do/does/did.</p> <p><i>No usan do/does/did para formar las preguntas y negativas.</i></p>	<p>Can he speak Spanish?</p> <p>She can't swim.</p> <p>He mustn't work so much.</p> <p>Should I go?</p>
<p>They are followed by a full verb in the infinitive (without TO).</p> <p>Exceptions: be able to, need to, have to and ought to.</p> <p><i>Van seguidos de infinitivo sin TO, excepto be able to, need to, have to y ought to.</i></p>	<p>They must read that book.</p> <p>They have to read that book.</p>
<p>There are no past forms (except could).</p> <p><i>No tienen pasado (excepto COULD, pasado de CAN).</i></p>	She could not come yesterday.

Form

positive		negative	
long form	contracted form	long form	contracted form
can	--	cannot	can't
could	--	could not	couldn't
may	--	may not	--
should	--	should not	shouldn't
must	--	must not	mustn't

MODAL VERBS

MODAL	EXAMPLES	USE
CAN	He can find any street in London. You can take a taxi. Can you take me to Victoria Station?	Ability Suggestion Request
BE ABLE TO	He is able to find any street in London.	Ability
CAN'T	That story can't be true.	Certainty that something is impossible
COULD	I could play tennis when I was younger. Could you take me to Victoria Station? You could take a taxi.	Ability Request Suggestion
MAY	It may be quicker to travel by train. May I come in?	Possibility Formal request
MIGHT	It might be quicker to travel by train.	Possibility
MUST	You must be back at 10 o'clock. Look at the snow. It must be cold outside.	Obligation Certainty that something is true
HAVE TO	You have to be back at 10 o'clock.	Obligation
NEED TO	You need to study a lot.	Obligation
NEEDN'T	You needn't have a university degree.	Lack of obligation
MUSTN'T	You mustn't drive without a licence.	Prohibition
DON'T HAVE TO	You don't have to call a taxi.	Lack of obligation
SHOULD	You should drive more carefully.	Opinion / Advice
OUGHT TO	You ought to drive more carefully.	Opinion / Advice

able to
should
can
must
had better
have to



CAN / BE ABLE TO

CAN tiene muchos usos:

- a) Para expresar habilidad o capacidad: "saber", "poder". *I **can** swim.*
- b) Para hacer peticiones, dar y pedir permiso de manera informal. ***Can** you open the door? You **can** come in.*
- c) Para indicar posibilidad: *We **can** do that later.* (Podemos hacer eso luego).

En negativa tiene, además de estos, otros dos usos:

- d) Para expresar deducción. *She **can't** be ill, I saw her a minute ago.*
- e) Para indicar prohibición. *You **can't** smoke here.* (No puedes fumar aquí).

Utilizamos **be able to** en los tiempos que carece **CAN**. **BE ABLE TO** también indica habilidad y posibilidad como **can**, pero en los tiempos que le faltan a este verbo modal. *Will you **be able to** do it before six o'clock?.* (¿Podrás hacerlo antes de las 6?)

COULD

- a) Se usa para expresar habilidad y capacidad en el pasado.
- b) Para hacer peticiones o pedir un favor de manera más formal que con **can**.
- c) Para hacer sugerencias.
- d) Para indicar posibilidad, pero dando a entender que es más remota que si usamos **can**. *We **could** go on Friday afternoon..* (Podríamos ir el viernes por la tarde).

MAY / MIGHT

- a) Ambos verbos expresan la posibilidad de que algo ocurra en el presente o en el futuro, sin ser seguro. Como hemos visto antes, **can** también expresa posibilidad pero denota que las circunstancias reales lo permiten. *It **may** rain tomorrow.*
- b) **May** también se utiliza para pedir y dar permiso de una forma más educada que con **can**. ***May** I go to the toilet? You **may** start.*

MUST / HAVE TO

Must solo tiene presente, así que para el resto de los tiempos se usa **have to**.

- a) Los dos verbos expresan necesidad y obligación, pero con **must** la necesidad es más fuerte. Cuando queremos suavizar la frase utilizamos **have to**.

*You **must** take a decision as soon as possible.* (Debes tomar una decisión lo antes posible)

*She **has to** work tomorrow.* (Tiene que trabajar mañana)

- b) **Must** sirve para expresar una conclusión lógica. *They **must** be home, the lights are on.*

NEED TO / NEEDN'T

- a) **Need to** expresa obligación o necesidad.
- b) **Needn't** indica ausencia de obligación o necesidad.

MUSTN'T / DON'T HAVE TO

- a) **Mustn't** indica prohibición.
- b) **Don't have to** tiene un valor totalmente distinto pues significa ausencia de necesidad, igual que **needn't**.

*You **don't have to** wash the dishes.* (No tienes por qué lavar los platos / no es necesario).

SHOULD / OUGHT TO

- a) Se pueden utilizar indistintamente para dar consejos y hacer recomendaciones, aunque **should** es mucho más frecuente. **Ought to** apenas se usa en negativa e interrogativa.

MODAL PERFECTS

Los Verbos Modales Perfectos

MODAL	EXAMPLES	USE
MUST HAVE	The driver <i>must have lost</i> his way.	A certainty or logical conclusion about an event in the past.
MIGHT / MAY HAVE	She <i>might / may have bought</i> a new car.	A guess about something which happened in the past.
COULD HAVE	You <i>could have avoided</i> that accident.	The ability to do something in the past, but which in the end was not done.
COULDN'T HAVE	He <i>couldn't have known</i> about the problem.	A certainty that something did not happen.
SHOULD HAVE	He <i>should have listened</i> to me. They <i>should have won</i> the competition.	Advice which was not followed in the past. Expectations which were not fulfilled in the past.
SHOULDN'T HAVE	You <i>shouldn't have gone</i> on foot.	Criticism that was given after an event.

Must have + participio

Se usa para expresar certeza o una conclusión lógica sobre un hecho pasado.

Might / May have + participio

Se usa para hacer una predicción sobre algo pasado.

Could have + participio

Indica que hubo la posibilidad de haber hecho algo en el pasado pero que finalmente no se hizo.

Couldn't have + participio

En negativa expresa la imposibilidad de que el hecho enunciado se realizara.

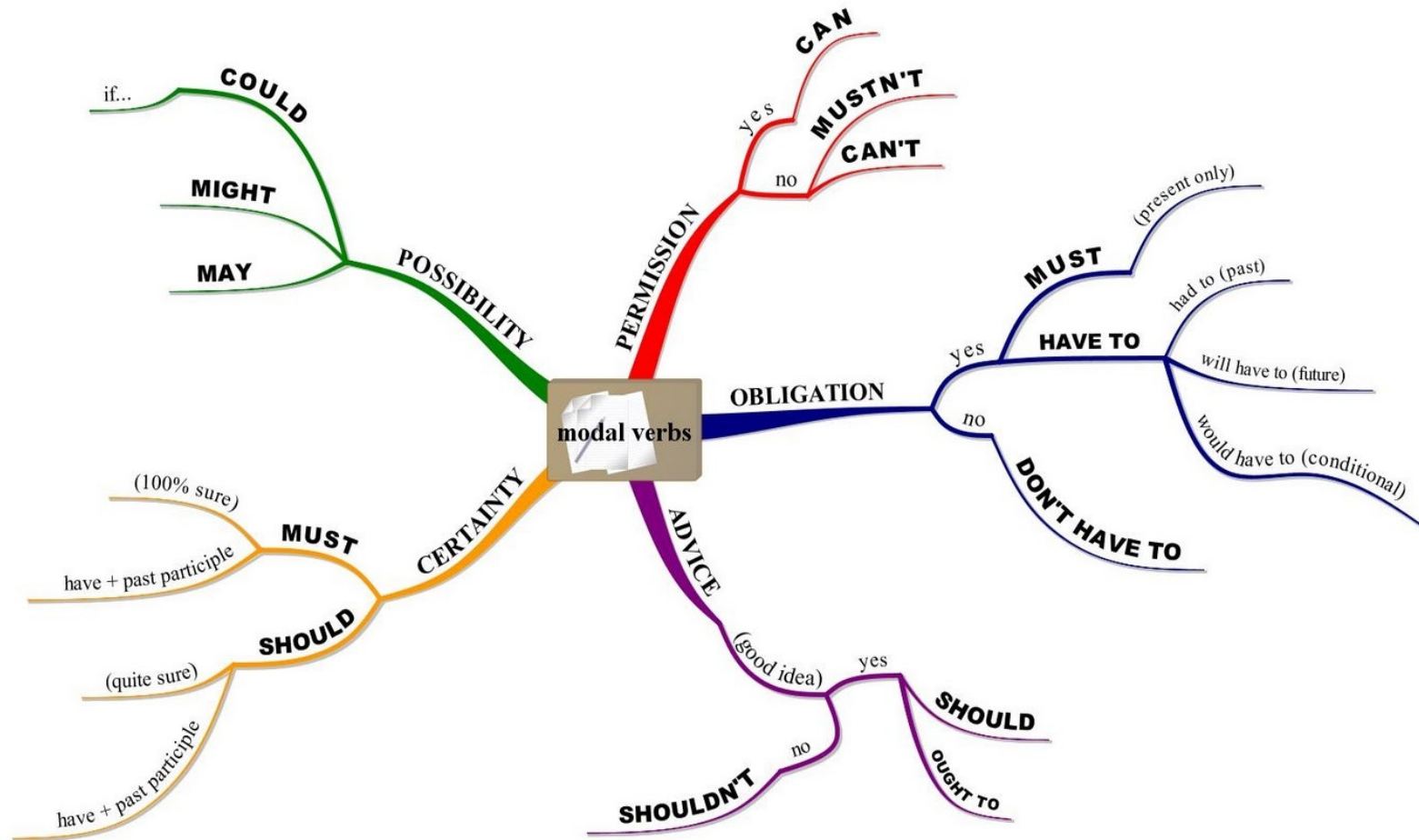
Should have + participio

Se usa para lamentar que algo no ocurriera en el pasado y que no se haya cumplido lo que esperábamos.

Shouldn't have + participio

Con este modal expresamos nuestra opinión crítica sobre un hecho pasado indicando que no debería haber ocurrido.

MODAL VERBS



Choose the right modal verb

1. There are a lot of tomatoes in the fridge. You _____ buy any.

mustn't
needn't
may not
should not

2. It's a hospital. You _____ smoke.

mustn't
needn't
may not
don't have to

3. He has been working for more than 11 hours. He _____ be tired after such hard work.

must
need
had better
mustn't



4. I _____ speak Arabic fluently when I was a child and we lived in Morocco. But after we moved back to Canada, I had very little exposure to the language and forgot almost everything I knew as a child.

could
might
can
must

Now, I _____ just say a few things in the language.

may
can
must
need

5. The teacher said we _____ read this book for our own pleasure as it is optional.

can
needn't
must
should

6. _____ you stand on your head for more than a minute?

May
Need
Must
Can

No, I _____

may not
needn't
can't
must

7. If you want to learn to speak English fluently, you _____ work hard.

could
must
needn't
mustn't

8. Take an umbrella. It _____ rain later.

need
should
mustn't
might

9. You _____ leave small objects lying around .

shouldn't
need
needn't
may not

Such objects _____ be swallowed by children.

must
need
may
mustn't

10. People _____ walk on grass.

couldn't
needn't
mustn't
may not

11. Drivers _____ stop when the traffic lights are red.

could
must
may
can

12. _____ I ask you a question? Yes, of course.

May
Must
Should
Will

13. You _____ take your umbrella. It is not raining.

couldn't
needn't
mustn't
may not

14. _____ you speak Italian?

Can
Need
Should
May

No, I _____.

shouldn't
mustn't
may not
can't



able to
should
can
must
had better
have to

ANSWERS

1. There are a lot of tomatoes in the fridge. You **needn't** buy any.
2. It's a hospital. You **mustn't** smoke.
3. He has been working for more than 11 hours. He **must** be tired after such hard work.
4. I **could** speak Arabic fluently when I was a child and we lived in Morocco. But after we moved back to Canada, I had very little exposure to the language and forgot almost everything I knew as a child. Now, I **can** just say a few things in the language.
5. The teacher said we **can** read this book for our own pleasure as it is optional.
6. **Can** you stand on your head for more than a minute? No, I **can't**.
7. If you want to learn to speak English fluently, you **must** work hard.
8. Take an umbrella. It **might** rain later.
9. You **shouldn't** leave small objects lying around. Such objects **may** be swallowed by children.
10. People **mustn't** walk on grass.
11. Drivers **must** stop when the traffic lights are red.
12. **May** I ask you a question? Yes, of course.
13. You **needn't** take your umbrella. It is not raining.
14. **Can** you speak Italian? No, I **can't**.

MODAL VERBS EXERCISES

1. CIRCLE THE CORRECT ANSWER.

- ◆ You (may/must) eat three nutritious meals a day if you want to be healthy.
- ◆ We will be in France this summer. (Would/ could) we spend a few days with you?
- ◆ You (shouldn't/should) be respectful to the elderly.
- ◆ If you want to have dinner at the restaurant, you (are able to/ ought to) book a table in advance.
- ◆ In order to be accepted to university, you (might/have to) get good marks in your exams.



2. CHOOSE THE CORRECT WORDS.

- 1) This is top secret. You (mustn't/don't have to) tell anybody.
- 2) Look at those clouds. I think it (must/might) rain soon.
- 3) Do you have toothache? Don't you think you (should/have to) go to the dentist?
- 4) I would like to talk to you . (May/Would) I call you at home?
- 5) When she was younger, she (can/could) run much faster.
- 6) It was very difficult, but Danny (might/ was able to) get a ticket for the football match.

3. CHOOSE THE CORRECT OPTION.

- A. When David was three years old he _____ write his own name.
1. must 2. could 3. is able to
- B. In my opinion, Sheila _____ apologise for her rude behaviour.
1. should 2. have to 3. can
- C: Pupils _____ smoke in the school grounds. It is forbidden.
1. couldn't 2. needn't 3. musn't
- D. The bus _____ be late because of the heavy rain.
1. should 2. might 3. can
- E. I'm sorry, I _____ help you. I don't know anything about cars.
1. shouldn't 2. can't 3. needn't

4. CHOOSE THE CORRECT MODAL VERB.

1. My brother *could/might* walk before he started talking.
2. You have worked very hard. You *could/must* be tired.
3. Helen *mustn't/couldn't* do her homework because she was ill.
4. The weather forecast says it *may/should* rain tomorrow.
5. I'll try to finish, but I *can't/might not* have enough time.
6. Jim always goes on holiday to the same place. He *might/must* like it there.

MODAL VERBS EXERCISES. ANSWERS:

1. CIRCLE THE CORRECT ANSWER.

- ◆ You **must** eat three nutritious meals a day if you want to be healthy.
- ◆ We will be in France this summer. **Could** we spend a few days with you?
- ◆ You **should** be respectful to the elderly.
- ◆ If you want to have dinner at the restaurant, you **ought to** book a table in advance.
- ◆ In order to be accepted to university, you **have to** get good marks in your exams.

2. CHOOSE THE CORRECT WORDS.

- 1) This is top secret. You **mustn't** tell anybody.
- 2) Look at those clouds. I think it **might** rain soon.
- 3) Do you have toothache? Don't you think you **should** go to the dentist?
- 4) I would like to talk to you. **May** I call you at home?
- 5) When she was younger, she **could** run much faster.
- 6) It was very difficult, but Danny **was able to** get a ticket for the football match.

3. CHOOSE THE CORRECT OPTION.

- B. When David was three years old he _____ write his own name.
1. must **2. could** 3. is able to
- B. In my opinion, Sheila _____ apologise for her rude behaviour.
1. should 2. have to 3. can
- C: Pupils _____ smoke in the school grounds. It is forbidden.
1. couldn't 2. needn't **3. musn't**
- D. The bus _____ be late because of the heavy rain.
1. should **2. might** 3. can
- E. I'm sorry, I _____ help you. I don't know anything about cars.
1. shouldn't **2. can't** 3. needn't

4. CHOOSE THE CORRECT MODAL VERB.

- 1) My brother **could** walk before he started talking.
- 2) You have worked very hard. You **must** be tired.
- 3) Helen **couldn't** do her homework because she was ill.
- 4) The weather forecast says it **may** rain tomorrow.
- 5) I'll try to finish, but I **might not** have enough time.
- 6) Jim always goes on holiday to the same place. He **must** like it there.

5. CHOOSE THE CORRECT ANSWER.

- 1) Ron doesn't feel well. He _____ see a doctor.
a. should b. had to c. ought to
- 2) When the children were young, they _____ speak English. Unfortunately, they don't remember any of it.
a. must **b. could** c. might
- 3) It _____ rain tomorrow. Take umbrellas and raincoats with you on your trip.
a. can't **b. may** c. must
- 4) I _____ speak four languages. My parents taught me all four.
a. can b. need c. should
- 5) Although I broke my finger, I _____ sign my name.
a. was able to b. have to c. couldn't
- 6) You _____ review the work done in class or you will forget it.
a. should b. may c. needn't
- 7) you _____ eat so quickly. You will get stomach-ache.
a. can't b. doesn't have to **c. shouldn't**
- 8) As a child, he _____ dance like a professional.
a. can **b. could** c. is able to
- 9) They _____ travel to London tomorrow.
a. can't b. will be able to c. couldn't
- 10) Yesterday, I _____ enter the computer room because I had a special key.
a. was able to **b. could** c. can



PRESENT PERFECT

1. Present Perfect - Form

The present perfect of any verb is composed of two elements : the appropriate form of the auxiliary verb **to have** (present tense), plus the past participle of the main verb. The past participle of a regular verb is **base+ed**, e.g. *played, arrived, looked*. For irregular verbs, see the **Table of irregular verbs** in the section called '**Verbs**'.

Affirmative		
Subject	to have	past participle
<i>She</i>	<i>has</i>	<i>visited</i>
Negative		
Subject	to have + not	past participle
<i>She</i>	<i>hasn't</i>	<i>visited</i>
Interrogative		
to have	subject	past participle
<i>Has</i>	<i>she</i>	<i>visited..?</i>
Interrogative negative		
to have + not	subject	past participle
<i>Hasn't</i>	<i>she</i>	<i>visited...?</i>

Example: *to walk*, present perfect

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I have walked	I haven't walked	Have I walked?
You have walked	You haven't walked	Have you walked?
He, she, it has walked	He, she, it hasn't walked	Has he, she, it walked?
We have walked	We haven't walked	Have we walked?
You have walked	You haven't walked	Have you walked?
They have walked	They haven't walked	Have they walked?

2. Present perfect, function

The Present Perfect is used to indicate a link between the present and the past. The time of the action is **before now but not specified**, and we are often more interested in the **result** than in the action itself.

BE CAREFUL! There may be a verb tense in your language with a similar form, but the meaning is probably NOT the same.

The Present Perfect is used to describe:

1. An action or situation that started in the past and continues in the present.
Example: *I have lived in Bristol since 1984* (= and I still do.)
2. An action performed during a period that has not yet finished. Example: She **has been** to the cinema twice this week (= and the week isn't over yet.)
3. A repeated action in an unspecified period between the past and now. Example: We **have visited** Portugal several times.

4. An action that was completed in the **very recent** past, (expressed by '**just**').
Example: I **have just finished** my work.
5. An action when the time is not important. Example: He **has read** 'War and Peace'.
(the **result** of his reading is important)

Note: When we want to give or ask details about *when, where, who*, we use the simple past. Example: He **read** 'War and Peace' **last week**.

Examples:

1. Actions started in the past and continuing in the present.

- They **haven't lived** here for years.
- She **has worked** in the bank for five years.
- We **have had** the same car for ten years.
- **Have you played** the piano since you were a child?

2. When the time period referred to has not finished.

- **I have worked** hard **this week**.
- It **has rained** a lot **this year**.
- We **haven't seen** her **today**.

3. Actions repeated in an unspecified period between the past and now.

- They **have seen** that film six times.
- It **has happened** several times already.
- She **has visited** them frequently.
- We **have eaten** at that restaurant many times.

4. Actions completed in the very recent past (+*just*).

- **Have you just finished** work?
- I **have just eaten**.
- We **have just seen** her.
- **Has he just left?**

5. When the precise time of the action is not important or not known.

- Someone **has eaten** my soup!
- **Have you seen** 'Gone with the Wind'?
- **She's studied** Japanese, Russian and English.

PRESENT PERFECT + *ever, never, already, yet*

The adverbs **ever** and **never** express the idea of an unidentified time **before now** e.g. *Have you **ever** visited Berlin?*

'Ever' is used

- **in questions.** e.g.
*Have you **ever** been to England?*
*Has she **ever** met the Prime Minister?*
- **in negative questions** e.g.
*Haven't they **ever** been to Europe?*
*Haven't you **ever** eaten Chinese food?*
- **and in negative statements using the pattern *nothing.....ever, nobody.....ever*** e.g.
Nobody has **ever** said that to me before.
Nothing like this has **ever** happened to us.
- **'Ever' is also used with 'The first time....'** e.g.
*It's the first time (that) I've **ever** eaten snails.*
This is the first time I've ever been to England.

'Never' means at no time before now, and is the same as not ever:

- *I have **never** visited Berlin*

BE CAREFUL!

You must not use **never** and **not** together:

- ~~*I haven't never been to Italy.*~~
- *I have **never** been to Italy.*

Position

'Ever' and 'never' are always placed **before the main verb (past participle)**.

Already and yet

Already

refers to an action that has happened at an unspecified time before now. It suggests that there is no need for repetition, e.g.

- I've **already** drunk three coffees this morning.* (and you're offering me another one!)
- Don't write to John, I've **already** done it.*

It is also used in questions:

- *Have you **already** written to John?*

Position

already is usually placed before the main verb (past participle):

- I have **already** been to Tokyo.

Yet

is used in negative statements and questions, to mean *(not) in the period of time between before now and now, (not) up to and including the present.* e.g.

- Have you met Judy **yet**?
- I haven't visited the Tate Gallery **yet**.
- Has he arrived **yet**?
- They haven't eaten **yet**.

Position

Yet is usually placed at the end of the sentence.

PRESENT PERFECT + *for, since*

Using the present perfect, we can define a period of time before now by considering its **duration**, with **for** + a **period of time**, or by considering its **starting point**, with **since** + a **point in time**.

For + a period of time

- **for** six years, **for** a week, **for** a month, **for** hours, **for** two hours.
- I have worked here **for** five years.

Since + a point in time

- **since** this morning, **since** last week, since yesterday,
- **since** I was a child, **since** Wednesday, since 2 o'clock.
- I have worked here **since** 1990.

present perfect with for

- She has lived here **for** twenty years.
- We have taught at this school **for** a long time.
- They have been at the hotel **for** a week.

present perfect with since

- She has lived here **since** 1980.
- We have taught at this school **since** 1965
- Alice has been married **since** March 2nd.

FOR + a period of time *He hasn't eaten anything FOR twenty-four hours.*

SINCE + starting time *He hasn't eaten anything SINCE yesterday.*

Choose between *for* or *since*.

They have lived in Alicante...

- for/since August.
- for/since a month.
- for/since last month.
- for/since the accident.
- for/since we bought this house.

I haven't seen her...

- for/since more than two weeks now.
- for/since Christmas Eve.
- for/since the 90s.
- for/since then.
- for/since we finished school.

Peter has been my best friend...

- for/since 2005.
- for/since fifteen years.
- for/since my birthday.
- for/since a long time.
- for/since I met him.

It has been very foggy...

- for/since ten seconds.
- for/since early morning.
- for/since nine o'clock.
- for/since five hours.
- for/since a couple of days.

Complete the sentences with *for* or *since*.

1. They have had this car _____ April.
2. Nobody has come to see us _____ two months.
3. I have studied non-stop _____ 8.30 a.m.
4. I have tried to finish this letter _____ the last half an hour.
5. They have all been ill _____ the last week.
6. She has worked in that office _____ a week.
7. I have worked with you _____ last weekend.
8. I have been a vegetarian _____ Christmas.
9. He bought the car in 1999 and has driven it _____ then.
10. She has been a doctor _____ 1997.
11. He has been in prison _____ two years.
12. I have been very patient with you _____ several years.
13. You have had this job _____ a decade.
14. I have known her _____ ages.
15. I have known her _____ we were students.
16. Things have changed _____ I was in your house.

Complete the sentences using *for* or *since*.

1. I haven't eaten pizza...
2. I haven't been to the cinema...
3. I haven't visited my grandmother...
4. I haven't talked to my father...
5. I have been in this High School...
6. I have studied English...
7. I have played football...
8. I have known the teacher...

JUST / YET / STILL / ALREADY

These words are often used with the **present perfect** tense although **yet**, **still** and **already** can all be used with other tenses.

Just

'**Just**' is usually used only with the present perfect tense and it means 'a short time ago'.

*I've just seen Susan coming out of the cinema.
Mike's just called. Can you ring him back please?
Have you just taken my pen? Where has it gone?*

In the present perfect, '**just**' comes between the auxiliary verb ('have') and the past participle.

Yet

'**Yet**' is used to talk about something which is expected to happen. It means 'at any time up to now'. It is used in questions and negatives.

*Have you finished your homework yet? The speaker expects that the homework will be finished.
I haven't finished it yet. I'll do it after dinner.*

'**Yet**' usually comes at the end of the sentence.

Still

'**Still**' is used to talk about something that hasn't finished – especially when we expected it to finish earlier.

*I've been waiting for over an hour and the bus still hasn't come.
You promised to give me that report yesterday and you still haven't finished it.*

'**Still**' usually comes in 'mid-position' **Still** is often used with other tenses as well as the present perfect.

*I've still got all those letters you sent me.
Are you still working in the bookshop?*

Already

'**Already**' is used to say that something has happened early – or earlier than it might have happened.

*I've already spent my salary and it's two weeks before pay day.
The train's already left! What are we going to do?*

'**Already**' usually comes in mid-position.



In affirmative sentences	<i>Dad's just washed up.</i>	He finished a few minutes ago
In affirmative sentences	<i>Dad's already washed up.</i>	It's done but we don't know when
In negative sentences	<i>Dad still hasn't washed up.</i>	The dirty plates are still in the sink
In negative sentences	<i>Dad hasn't washed up yet.</i>	The dirty plates are still in the sink
In questions	<i>Has Dad washed up yet?</i>	You want to know

Fill in the spaces below using either Just, Yet or Already.

1. Don't come in here with those muddy shoes!! I have _____ cleaned the floor!!!
2. Have you _____ finished that composition for History class? You only started an hour ago!!
3. I don't want to see "Alien 9" at the cinema again. I've _____ seen it twice.
4. I'm sorry. You have _____ missed Katie. She left the office about three minutes ago!
5. Haven't you finished that composition for History class _____? You started over four hours ago!
6. Oh, nothing for me, thank you. I've _____ eaten. I had dinner less than an hour ago.
7. You've _____ finished your dinner! You must have been starving!
8. "Have you called Yasmin to wish her luck for the exam today?"
"No, not _____. I'll do it now!"
9. Kathy knows all about pizza and pasta, don't you Kathy? You've _____ returned from a month in Umbria.
10. Yes, I know David. We have _____ been introduced. It was at a party last week.

ANSWERS:

Don't come in here with those muddy shoes!! I have **just** cleaned the floor!!!

Have you **already** finished that composition for History class? You only started an hour ago!!

I don't want to see "Alien 9" at the cinema again. I've **already** seen it twice.

I'm sorry. You have **just** missed Katie. She left the office about three minutes ago!

Haven't you finished that composition for History class **yet**? You started over four hours ago!

Oh, nothing for me, thank you. I've **already** eaten. I had dinner less than an hour ago.

You've **already** finished your dinner! You must have been starving!

"Have you called Yasmin to wish her luck for the exam today?"
"No, not **yet**. I'll do it now!"

Kathy knows all about pizza and pasta, don't you Kathy? You've **just** returned from a month in Umbria.

Yes, I know David. We have **already** been introduced. It was at a party last week.

<http://learnenglish.britishcouncil.org/en/grammar-reference/just-yet-still-already>
<http://www.esl-lounge.com/student/grammar/2g7-just-yet-already.php>

Present Perfect Continuous

Forms

Positive	Negative	Question
I have been sleeping . You have been sleeping . He has been sleeping . She has been sleeping . It has been sleeping .	I have not been sleeping . You have not been sleeping . He has not been sleeping . She has not been sleeping . It has not been sleeping .	Have I been sleeping? Have you been sleeping? Has he been sleeping? Has she been sleeping? Has it been sleeping?
We have been sleeping . You have been sleeping . They have been sleeping .	We have not been sleeping . You have not been sleeping . They have not been sleeping .	Have we been sleeping? Have you been sleeping? Have they been sleeping?



There are two main situations where we use this tense:

1: To say how long for unfinished actions which started in the past and continue to the present. We often use this with **for** and **since**. (See the **present perfect** for the same use with stative verbs)

I've been living in London for two years.
She's been working here since 2004.
We've been waiting for the bus for hours.

2: Actions which have just stopped (though the whole action can be unfinished) and have a result, which we can often see, hear, or feel, in the present (focus on action). (See the **present perfect** for a similar use which focuses on the result of the action)

I'm so tired, I've been studying.
I've been running, so I'm really hot.

Completa las frases usando el verbo entre paréntesis en Present Perfect o Simple Past.

1. Jane _____ (stay) at home yesterday.
2. Your letter _____ (arrive) five days ago.
3. I _____ (live) here for four years.
4. Last week we _____ (go) to the mountains.
5. The game _____ (start) . They are playing now.
6. I _____ (phone) you at five and you weren't there.
7. I _____ (lose) my watch, I can't find it.
8. Last month Sarah _____ (travel) to France.
9. I _____ (work) all day and now I'm tired.
10. We _____ (buy) a new car last week.

Answers:

- | | | |
|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. stayed | 4. went | 8. travelled |
| 2. arrived | 5. has started | 9. have worked |
| 3. have lived | 6. phoned | 10. bought |
| | 7. have lost | |

Complete the sentences with the Past Simple or the Present Perfect:

1. Last night I _____ (lose) my keys – I had to call my flatmate to let me in.
2. I _____ (lose) my keys – can you help me look for them?
3. I _____ (visit) Paris three times.
4. Last year I _____ (visit) Paris.
5. I _____ (know) my grandmother for a few years – she died when I was eight.
6. I _____ (know) Julie for three years – we still meet once a month.
7. I _____ (play) hockey since I was a child – I'm pretty good!
8. She _____ (play) hockey at school, but she _____ (not / like) it.
9. Sorry, I _____ (miss) the bus, so I'm going to be late.
10. I _____ (miss) the bus, and then I _____ (miss) the aeroplane as well!
11. Last month I _____ (go) to Scotland.
12. I'm sorry, John isn't here now. He _____ (go) to the shops.
13. We _____ (finish) this room last week.
14. I _____ (finish) my exams finally – I'm so happy!
15. Yesterday, I _____ (go) to the library, the post office and the supermarket.
16. I _____ (go) to the supermarket three times this week!
17. She _____ (live) in London since 1994.
18. She _____ (live) in London when she was a child.
19. I _____ (drink) three cups of coffee this morning.
20. I _____ (drink) seven cups of coffee yesterday.

Answers:

- | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. lost | 7. have played | 14. have finished |
| 2. have lost | 8. played / didn't like | 15. went |
| 3. have visited | 9. have missed | 16. have been |
| 4. visited | 10. missed/ missed | 17. has lived |
| 5. knew | 11. went | 18. lived |
| 6. have known | 12. has gone | 19. have drunk |
| | 13. finished | 20. drank |

Present perfect simple and past simple

Present perfect simple
<p>We use the present perfect simple:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> to talk about an experience in somebody's life. (We don't say when it happened.) <i>He's had a mobile phone for a long time.</i> with <i>for</i> and <i>since</i> to talk about an action that started in the past and continues to the present. <i>Tim's known Kate since he was ten.</i> with <i>just</i>, <i>yet</i> and <i>already</i> for a past action with a result in the present. <i>I've just bought a new mountain bike.</i>
Past simple
<p>We use the past simple to talk about a finished action that happened at a definite time in the past. <i>We saw John at the weekend.</i></p>

1 Choose the correct words.

- They've **already** / **yet** visited Venice.
- Have you **ever** / **never** seen a ghost?
- Has she finished work **just** / **yet**?
- They've been married **for** / **since** October.
- Lucy has worked in the circus **since** / **for** she was a child.
- David has **just** / **yet** got back from holiday.

2 Complete the newspaper extracts. Use the correct form of the present perfect simple or the past simple.

Last night a massive tidal wave ¹..... (**hit**) the coast of Mexico. Over 5,000 people ²..... (**already** / **lose**) their homes.

Yesterday a girl ³..... (**hand in**) a briefcase containing £100,000 to the police. The girl found the briefcase at Euston railway station.

The cost of living in Britain ⁴..... (**rise**) again. Last year prices in British supermarkets ⁵..... (**increase**) by more than five per cent.

3 Complete the text. Use the correct form of the present perfect simple or the past simple.

¹..... you (**ever** / **dream**) of being a film star? Leonardo DiCaprio was only five years old when he ²..... (**star**) in his first TV show, and just thirteen when he ³..... (**appear**) in his first film. Since then he ⁴..... (**not stop**) working. He ⁵..... (**be**) in over fifteen films and he ⁶..... (**work**) with stars such as Robert De Niro and Johnny Depp.

Leonardo ⁷..... (**be**) born in Los Angeles in 1974. After appearing in TV shows, he ⁸..... (**get**) his first film role in Critters 3, then he starred in Romeo and Juliet. But it ⁹..... (**not be**) until Titanic that he ¹⁰..... (**become**) a world-famous teen idol. It was then that Leonardo ¹¹..... (**begin**) to appear on magazine covers around the world.

Since Titanic, Leonardo ¹²..... (**be**) very busy. He ¹³..... (**already** / **make**) three more films and ¹⁴..... (**just** / **start**) work on another.

4 Write questions about Leonardo. Use the present perfect simple or the past simple.

- How old / when / first appear / on TV?
.....
.....
- ever / meet / Robert De Niro?
.....
.....
- How long / be / an actor?
.....
.....
- famous / before Titanic?
.....
.....
- How many / films / make / since Titanic?
.....
.....

Present perfect simple and past simple

- 1 1 already 4 since
- 2 ever 5 since
- 3 yet 6 just

- 2 1 hit
- 2 have already lost
- 3 handed in
- 4 has risen
- 5 increased

- 3 1 Have you ever dreamed 8 got
- 2 starred 9 wasn't
- 3 appeared 10 became
- 4 hasn't stopped 11 began
- 5 's been 12 has been
- 6 's worked 13 's already made
- 7 was 14 has just started

- 4 1 How old was he when he first appeared on TV?
- 2 Has he ever met Robert De Niro?
- 3 How long has he been an actor?
- 4 Was he famous before *Titanic*?
- 5 How many films has he made since *Titanic*?

Present perfect continuous

Present perfect continuous

Affirmative: we use *have/has + been + the -ing* form of the verb.

He's been writing letters all morning.

Negative: we use *haven't/hasn't + been + the -ing* form of the verb.

We haven't been reading much lately.

Interrogative: we put *have/has* before the subject + *been + the -ing* form of the verb.

You look hot! Have you been running?

1 Complete the conversations with the correct form of the present perfect continuous.

- 'How long he
(**play**) that computer game?'
'Since ten o'clock this morning!'
- 'You look dirty!'
'I (**repair**) my motorbike.'
- 'Frank has got a black eye.'
'..... he
(**fight**) again?'
- 'Why is she crying?'
'She (**watch**) a sad film.'
- 'Mary looks tired.'
'Yes. She (**revise**) all night
for her exams.'
- 'I've been here since one o'clock. What
..... you (**do**)?'
'I (look for) you!'

Present perfect simple

We use the present perfect simple to emphasize:

- the result of an activity (not the activity itself).
We've written ten letters today.
- how many times an activity happens.
I've read this book three times.

Present perfect continuous

We use the present perfect continuous to emphasize:

- the process of an activity.
We've been writing letters since breakfast.
- how long an activity continues.
I've been reading all morning.

2 Choose the correct tenses.

- Steven Spielberg **has directed / has been directing** over twenty films since 1980.
- He **has worked on / has been working** on a new film since January.
- John Galliano **has designed / has been designing** clothes for a long time.
- He has designed / has been designing** two new collections since last summer.
- Lonely Planet **have published / have been publishing** two new travel guides this month.
- They **have published / have been publishing** travel guides for years.

3 Complete the text. Use the correct form of the present perfect simple or the present perfect continuous.

Ever since he was a teenager Alex Whitestone
1 (**want**) to travel. This year he
decided to do it. Alex gave up his job as a
journalist in July, and since then he
2 (**travel**) around the world. So far
he 3 (**visit**) four different countries.

At the moment Alex is in Bangkok, in
Thailand. He 4 (**already / be**)
there for five days. 'I 5 (**never / be**)
to Asia before, so it was my first stop,' he
explains.

So 6 he (**buy**) any
souvenirs yet? 'Not yet,' says Alex.

And what about the food? 'It's great! I
7 (**eat**) a lot of rice and fish,' he says.

During his travels Alex 8 (**meet**)
many other tourists. 'I 9 (**made**)
some new friends,' he says, 'and we
10 (**exchange**) advice about where
to go and what to see. I 11 (**also /**
write) a travel guide, but I 12 (**not**
finish) it yet!'

PRESENT PERFECT vs PRESENTE PERFECT CONTINUOUS

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1.- At last! I _____ (solve) the problem.
- 2.- What _____ recently? (you / do) Anything interesting?
- 3.- My brother _____ (buy) a new motorbike. It looks great.
- 4.- _____ (you / swim)? Your hair looks wet.
- 5.- Oh, There you are! I _____ (look) for you everywhere.
- 6.- Sorry we are late. How long _____ (you / wait)?
- 7.- I _____ (know) Peter for a long time.
- 8.- My friends _____ (run) for two hours already.
- 9.- I _____ (never / understand) Maths and Physics.
- 10.- The children are tired because they _____ (play) all day.
- 11.- Susan _____ (never / believe) in ghosts and fairies.
- 12.- I _____ (write) emails all day.
- 13.- John _____ (never / see) this film before.
- 14.- What on earth _____ (you / do)? You're covered in mud.
- 15.- _____ (you / ever / see) Altamira Cave? I hear it's incredibly beautiful.
- 16.- How long _____ (he / learn) English?
- 17.- I _____ (just / speak) to my cousins. They told me the news.
- 18.- I'm sorry. Monica is not here.. She _____ (go) out.
- 19.- We're really tired because we _____ (train) for the marathon since eight o'clock.
- 20.- _____ (you / finish) doing your homework yet?
- 21.- The students _____ (revise) for their Spanish exam for two hours.
- 22.- Peter, why are you sweating? Because I _____ (hoover) the carpets.
- 23.- Is the lawn finished? Yes, Gonzalo _____ (cut) the grass.
- 24.- It's still raining. It _____ (rain) for hours.
- 25.- How much money _____ (you / spend) this week.





ANSWER KEY

- 1.- have solved
- 2.- have you been doing
- 3.- has bought
- 4.- have you been swimming
- 5.- have been looking
- 6.- have you been waiting
- 7.- have known
- 8.- have been running
- 9.- have never understood
- 10.- have been playing
- 11.- has never believed
- 12.- have been writing
- 13.- has never seen
- 14.- have you been doing
- 15.- have you ever seen
- 16.- has he been learning
- 17.- have just spoken
- 18.- has gone out
- 19.- have been training
- 20.- have you finished
- 21.- have been revising
- 22.- have been hoovering
- 23.- has cut
- 24.- has been raining
- 25.- have you spent

PRESENT PERFECT ACTIVITIES

Deception

Write down twelve present perfect sentences about things that you have and haven't done in your life using the verbs in the box. Some of the sentences should be true and some should be false.

meet / find / try / play / see / ride / take /
visit / be / do / eat / make

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____

5. _____

6. _____

7. _____

8. _____

9. _____

10. _____

11. _____

12. _____



Have just & Haven't yet

Write five things you have done very recently.

Example: I have just opened my text book.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

Write down five things you plan to do today, but haven't done yet.

Example: I haven't had dinner yet.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

Guess five things your partner 'has just done' or 'hasn't done yet' and write them down.

Example: Kim has just finished writing. / Kim hasn't made a phone call yet.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

Ask questions to your partner to see if your guesses are right or wrong.

Example: Have you just finished writing? Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.

Have you made a phone call yet? Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

ANSWER THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS:

1. Have you ever left a shop without paying?
2. Have you bought yourself anything expensive this month?
3. Have you ever lied about your age?
4. What have you eaten today?
5. What countries have you visited?
6. Have you ever broken a window?
7. Have you eaten in a restaurant this week?
8. What have you done today?
9. What is the most expensive thing you've ever bought?
10. What cities have you visited this year?
11. How many times have you been to England?
12. What have you drunk today?
13. How many times have you been in hospital?
14. Have you ever skied?
15. Have you ever lost your passport/ID card?
16. Where have you been today?
17. How many vacations have you had this year?
18. Have you had a good day today?
19. What's the best present you've ever received?
20. Have you bought any clothes this month?

PAST PERFECT

Past perfect, form

The Past Perfect tense in English is composed of two parts: the past tense of the verb *to have* (*had*) + the past participle of the main verb.

Subject	had	past participle
We	had	decided...
Affirmative		
She	had	given.
Negative		
We	hadn't	asked.
Interrogative		
Had	they	arrived?
	Interrogative negative	
Hadn't	you	finished?

Example: to decide, Past perfect

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I had decided	I hadn't decided	Had I decided?
You had decided	You hadn't decided	Had you decided?
He, she, it had decided	He hadn't decided	Had she decided?
We had decided	We hadn't decided	Had we decided?
You had decided	You hadn't decided	Had you decided?
They had decided	They hadn't decided	Had they decided?

Past perfect, function

The past perfect refers to a time **earlier than** before now. It is used to make it clear that one event happened before another in the past. It does not matter which event is mentioned first - the tense makes it clear which one happened first.

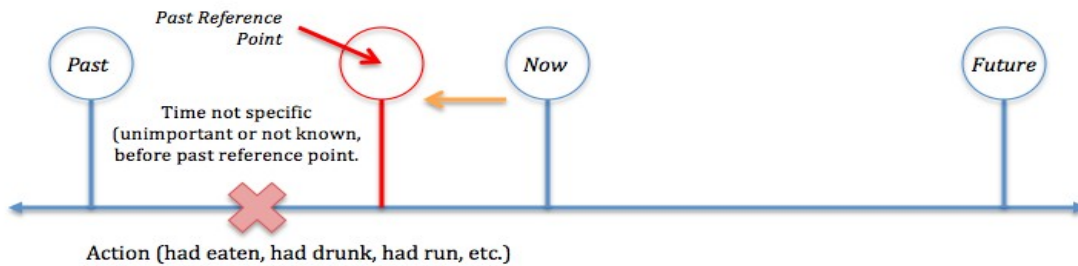
In these examples, **Event A** is the first or earliest event, **Event B** is the second or latest event:

a.	John had gone out Event A	when I arrived in the office. Event B
b.	I had saved my document Event A Event B	before the computer crashed. Event B
c.	When they arrived Event B	we had already started cooking Event A
d.	He was very tired Event B	because he hadn't slept well. Event A

A. PAST PERFECT EXERCISES

1. When I arrived at the cinema, the film _____ (start).
2. She _____ (live) in China before she went to Thailand.
3. After they _____ (eat) the shellfish, they began to feel sick.
4. If you _____ (listen) to me, you would have got the job.
5. Julie didn't arrive until after I _____ (leave).
6. When we _____ (finish) dinner, we went out.
7. The garden was dead because it _____ (be) dry all summer.
8. He _____ (meet) her before somewhere.
9. We were late for the plane because we _____ (forget) our passports.
10. She told me that she _____ (study) a lot before the exam.
11. The grass was yellow because it _____ (not / rain) all summer.
12. The lights went off because we _____ (not / pay) the electricity bill.
13. The children _____ (not/do) their homework, so they were in trouble.
14. They _____ (not/eat) so we went to a restaurant.
15. We couldn't go into the concert because we _____ (not / bring) our tickets.
16. She said that she _____ (not / visit) the UK before.
17. Julie and Anne _____ (not / meet) before the party.
18. I _____ (not / have) breakfast when he arrived.
19. He _____ (not / use) email before, so I showed him how to use it.
20. You _____ (not / study) for the test, so you were very nervous.

Past Perfect Tense

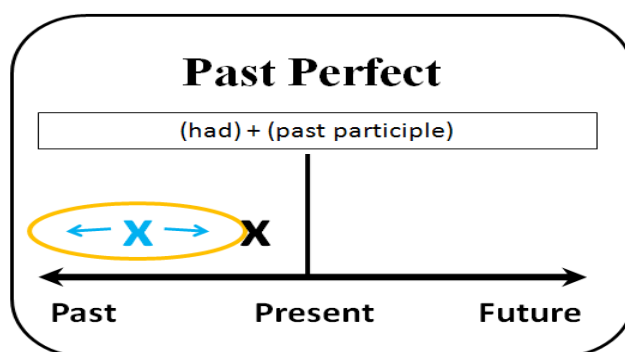


B. Choose the Past Perfect, or the Past Simple:

1. We had already eaten when John _____ (come) home.
2. Last year Juan _____ (pass) all his exams.
3. When I _____ (get) to the airport I discovered I had forgotten my passport.
4. I went to the library, then I _____ (buy) some milk and went home.
5. I opened my handbag to find that I _____ (forget) my credit card.
6. When we _____ (arrive) at the station, the train had already left.
7. We got home to find that someone _____ (break) into the house.
8. I opened the fridge to find someone _____ (eat) all my chocolate.
9. I had known my husband for three years when we _____ (get) married.
10. Julie was very pleased to see that John _____ (clean) the kitchen.
11. It _____ (not / rain) all summer, so the grass was completely dead.
12. When he _____ (arrive) at the party, Julie had just left.
13. After arriving home, I realised I _____ (not / buy) any milk.
14. The laundry was wet – it _____ (rain) while I was out.
15. William felt ill last night because he _____ (eat) too many cakes.
16. Keiko _____ (meet) William last September.
17. First I tidied the flat, then I _____ (sit) down and had a cup of coffee.
18. John _____ (play) the piano when he was a child, but he doesn't play now.
19. When I opened the curtains the sun was shining but the ground was white. It _____ (snow) during the night.
20. When Julie got home from her holiday, her flat was a mess. John _____ (have) a party.

Answers. Exercise A:

1. When I arrived at the cinema, the film had started.
2. She had lived in China before she went to Thailand.
3. After they had eaten the shellfish, they began to feel sick.
4. If you had listened to me, you would have got the job.
5. Julie didn't arrive until after I had left.
6. When we had finished dinner, we went out.
7. The garden was dead because it had been dry all summer.
8. He had met her before somewhere.
9. We were late for the plane because we had forgotten our passports.
10. She told me that she had studied a lot before the exam.
11. The grass was yellow because it hadn't rained all summer.
12. The lights went off because we hadn't paid the electricity bill.
13. The children hadn't done their homework, so they were in trouble.
14. They hadn't eaten so we went to a restaurant.
15. We couldn't go into the concert because we hadn't brought our tickets.
16. She said that she hadn't visited the UK before.
17. Julie and Anne hadn't met before the party.
18. I hadn't had breakfast when he arrived.
19. He hadn't used email before, so I showed him how to use it.
20. You hadn't studied for the test, so you were very nervous.



Answers. Exercise B:

1. We had already eaten when John came home.
2. Last year Juan passed all his exams.
3. When I got to the airport I discovered I had forgotten my passport.
4. I went to the library, then I bought some milk and went home.
5. I opened my handbag to find that I had forgotten my credit card.
6. When we arrived at the station, the train had already left.
7. We got home to find that someone had broken into the house.
8. I opened the fridge to find someone had eaten all my chocolate.
9. I had known my husband for three years when we got married.
10. Julie was very pleased to see that John had cleaned the kitchen.
11. It hadn't rained all summer, so the grass was completely dead.
12. When he arrived at the party, Julie had just left.
13. After arriving home, I realised I hadn't bought any milk.
14. The laundry was wet – it had rained while I was out.
15. William felt ill last night because he had eaten too many cakes.
16. Keiko met William last September.
17. First I tidied the flat, then I sat down and had a cup of coffee.
18. John played the piano when he was a child, but he doesn't play now.
19. When I opened the curtains the sun was shining but the ground was white. It had snowed during the night.
20. When Julie got home from her holiday, her flat was a mess. John had had a party.

Past Perfect and Past Simple

Choose the past perfect, or the past simple:

1. We had already eaten when John _____
(come) home.
2. Last year Juan _____ (pass) all his exams.
3. When I _____ (get) to the airport I
discovered I had forgotten my passport.
4. I went to the library, then I _____ (buy)
some milk and went home.
5. I opened my handbag to find that I _____
(forgot) my credit card.
6. When we _____ (arrive) at the station,
the train had already left.
7. We got home to find that someone _____
(break) into the house.
8. I opened the fridge to find someone
_____ (eat) all my chocolate.
9. I had known my husband for three years when we
_____ (get) married.
10. Julie was very pleased to see that John
_____ (clean) the kitchen.

11. It _____ (not / rain) all summer, so the grass was completely dead.
12. When he _____ (arrive) at the party, Julie had just left.
13. After arriving home, I realised I _____ (not / buy) any milk.
14. The laundry was wet – it _____ (rain) while I was out.
15. William felt ill last night because he _____ (eat) too many cakes.
16. Keiko _____ (meet) William last September.
17. First I tidied the flat, then I _____ (sit) down and had a cup of coffee.
18. John _____ (play) the piano when he was a child, but he doesn't play now.
19. When I opened the curtains the sun was shining but the ground was white. It _____ (snow) during the night.
20. When Julie got home from her holiday, her flat was a mess. John _____ (have) a party.

Answers:

1. We had already eaten when John came home.
2. Last year Juan passed all his exams.
3. When I got to the airport I discovered I had forgotten my passport.
4. I went to the library, then I bought some milk and went home.
5. I opened my handbag to find that I had forgotten my credit card.
6. When we arrived at the station, the train had already left.
7. We got home to find that someone had broken into the house.
8. I opened the fridge to find someone had eaten all my chocolate.
9. I had known my husband for three years when we got married.
10. Julie was very pleased to see that John had cleaned the kitchen.
11. It hadn't rained all summer, so the grass was completely dead.
12. When he arrived at the party, Julie had just left.
13. After arriving home, I realised I hadn't bought any milk.
14. The laundry was wet – it had rained while I was out.
15. William felt ill last night because he had eaten too many cakes.
16. Keiko met William last September.
17. First I tidied the flat, then I sat down and had a cup of coffee.
18. John played the piano when he was a child, but he doesn't play now.
19. When I opened the curtains the sun was shining but the ground was white.
It had snowed during the night.
20. When Julie got home from her holiday, her flat was a mess. John had had a party.

VERB TENSES REVISION EXERCISES



<p>Simple Present</p> <p>(verb) + (s or es - if using the 3rd person)</p> <p>X X X X X X X X X X X X</p> <p>Past Present Future</p> <p>You study English. She studies English.</p>	<p>Present Continuous</p> <p>(am / is / are) + (present participle)</p> <p>Past Present Future</p> <p>You are studying English right now.</p>	<p>Present Perfect</p> <p>(has / have) + (past participle)</p> <p>Past Present Future</p> <p>You have studied English at some time in the past.</p>	<p>Present Perfect Continuous</p> <p>(has / have) + (been) + (present participle)</p> <p>Past Present Future</p> <p>You have been studying English for three years and you may continue studying English.</p>
<p>Simple Past</p> <p>(verb) + (ed) or irregular</p> <p>X</p> <p>Past Present Future</p> <p>You studied English yesterday.</p>	<p>Past Continuous</p> <p>(was / were) + (present participle)</p> <p>Past Present Future</p> <p>You were studying English when the telephone rang.</p>	<p>Past Perfect</p> <p>(had) + (past participle)</p> <p>Past Present Future</p> <p>You had studied English at some point in time before you came to class.</p>	<p>Past Perfect Continuous</p> <p>(had) + (been) + (present participle)</p> <p>Past Present Future</p> <p>You had been studying English for two years before you came to class.</p>
<p>Simple Future</p> <p>(will) + (verb) (am / is / are) + (going to) + (verb)</p> <p>X X X X X X</p> <p>Past Present Future</p> <p>You will study English in the future. You are going to study English in the future.</p>	<p>Future Continuous</p> <p>(will) + (be) + (present participle) (am / is / are) + (going to) + (be) + (present participle)</p> <p>Past Present Future</p> <p>You will be studying English for the next two years. You are going to be studying English for the next two years.</p>	<p>Future Perfect</p> <p>(will) + (have) + (past participle) (am / is / are) + (going to) + (have) + (past participle)</p> <p>Past Present Future</p> <p>You will have studied English for two years at some time in 2012. You are going to have studied English for two years at some time in 2012.</p>	<p>Future Perfect Continuous</p> <p>(will) + (have) + (been) + (present participle) (am / is / are) + (going to) + (have) + (been) + (present participle)</p> <p>Past Present Future</p> <p>You will have been studying English for two years next Monday. You are going to have been studying English for two years next Monday.</p>

ACTIVITIES FROM

<http://www.english-grammar.at/worksheets/tenses/tenses.htm>

Simple Present

(verb) + (s or es - if using the 3rd person)

Past Present Future

You study English.
She studies English.

Present Continuous

(am / is / are) + (present participle)

Past Present Future

You are studying English right now.

Present Perfect

(has / have) + (past participle)

Past Present Future

You have studied English at some time in the past.

Present Perfect Continuous

(has / have) + (been) + (present participle)

Past Present Future

You have been studying English for three years and you may continue studying English.

Simple Past

(verb) + (ed) or irregular

Past Present Future

You studied English yesterday.

Past Continuous

(was / were) + (present participle)

Past Present Future

You were studying English when the telephone rang.

Past Perfect

(had) + (past participle)

Past Present Future

You had studied English at some point in time before you came to class.

Past Perfect Continuous

(had) + (been) + (present participle)

Past Present Future

You had been studying English for two years before you came to class.

Simple Future

(will) + (verb)
(am / is / are) + (going to) + (verb)

Past Present Future

You will study English in the future.
You are going to study English in the future.

Future Continuous

(will) + (be) + (present participle)
(am / is / are) + (going to) + (be) + (present participle)

Past Present Future

You will be studying English for the next two years.
You are going to be studying English for the next two years.

Future Perfect

(will) + (have) + (past participle)
(am / is / are) + (going to) + (have) + (past participle)

Past Present Future

You will have studied English for two years at some time in 2012.
You are going to have studied English for two years at some time in 2012.

Future Perfect Continuous

(will) + (have) + (been) + (present participle)
(am / is / are) + (going to) + (have) + (been) + (present participle)

Past Present Future

You will have been studying English for two years next Monday.
You are going to have been studying English for two years next Monday.

ENGLISH TENSES CHART. VERB "TO WAIT"

TENSE	AFFIRMAT.	NEGATIVE	QUESTION	TRANSL.
*SIMPLE PRESENT	I wait	I do not (don't) wait	Do I wait?	Yo espero
PRESENT CONTINUOUS	I am waiting	I am not waiting	Am I waiting?	Yo estoy esperando
SIMPLE PAST	I waited	I did not (didn't) wait	Did I wait?	Yo esperé
PAST CONTINUOUS	I was waiting	I was not waiting	Was I waiting?	Yo estaba esperando
*PRESENT PERFECT	I have waited	I have not waited	Have I waited?	Yo he esperado
*PRESENT PERF. CONT.	I have been waiting	I have not been waiting	Have I been waiting?	Yo he estado esperando
PAST PERFECT	I had waited	I had not waited	Had I waited?	Yo había esperado
PAST PERF. CONT.	I had been waiting	I had not been waiting	Had I been waiting?	Yo había estado esperando
FUTURE	I will wait	I will not wait	Will I wait?	Yo esperaré
FUTURE PERFECT	I will have waited	I will not have waited	Will I have waited?	Yo habré esperado
FUTURE CONTINUOUS	I will be waiting	I will not be waiting	Will I be waiting?	Yo estaré esperando
"GOING TO" FORM	I am going to wait	I am not going to wait	Am I going to wait?	Yo voy a esperar
VERBO MODAL (MUST/CAN/MAY..)	I can wait	I can't wait	Can I wait?	Yo puedo esperar
CONDITIONAL	I would wait	I would not wait	Would I wait?	Yo esperaría
CONDITIONAL PERFECT	I would have waited	I would not have waited	Would I have waited?	Yo habría esperado
CONDITIONAL CONTINUOUS	I would be waiting	I would not be waiting	Would I be waiting?	Yo estaría esperando

IMPORTANTE: LOS TIEMPOS MARCADOS CON * TIENEN UNA FORMA DISTINTA PARA 3ª P. SG.

IMPORTANTE: TODOS LOS TIEMPOS CONTINUOS SE FORMAN CON EL VERBO TO BE MÁS EL GERUNDIO (-ING FORM).

IMPORTANTE: TODOS LOS TIEMPOS PERFECTOS SE FORMAN CON EL VERBO TO HAVE MÁS EL PARTICIPIO PASADO (-ED/VB. IRREGULARES)

ENGLISH TENSES. VERB "TO SLEEP"

***SIMPLE PRESENT**

I sleep
I do not (don't) sleep
Do I sleep?
Yo duermo

PRESENT CONTINUOUS

I am sleeping
I am not sleeping
Am I sleeping?
Yo estoy durmiendo

SIMPLE PAST

I slept
I did not (didn't) sleep
Did I sleep?
Yo dormí

PAST CONTINUOUS

I was sleeping
I was not (wasn't) sleeping
Was I sleeping?
Yo estaba durmiendo

***PRESENT PERFECT**

I have slept
I have not slept
Have I slept?
Yo he dormido

***PRESENT PERF. CONT.**

I have been sleeping
I have not been sleeping
Have I been sleeping?
Yo he estado durmiendo

PAST PERFECT

I had slept
I had not slept
Had I slept?
Yo había dormido

PAST PERF. CONT.

I had been sleeping
I had not been sleeping
Had I been sleeping?
Yo había estado durmiendo

FUTURE

I will sleep

I will not (won't) sleep

Will I sleep?

Yo dormiré

FUTURE PERFECT

I will have slept

I will not have slept

Will I have slept?

Yo habré dormido

FUTURE CONTINUOUS

I will be sleeping

I will not be sleeping

Will I be sleeping?

Yo estaré durmiendo

"GOING TO" FORM

I am going to sleep

I am not going to sleep

Am I going to sleep?

Yo voy a dormir

VERBO MODAL (MUST/CAN/MAY..)

I can sleep

I can't sleep

Can I sleep?

Yo puedo dormir

CONDITIONAL

I would sleep

I would not sleep

Would I sleep?

Yo dormiría

CONDITIONAL PERFECT

I would have slept

I would not have slept

Would I have slept?

Yo habría dormido

CONDITIONAL CONTINUOUS

I would be sleeping

I would not be sleeping

Would I be sleeping?

Yo estaría durmiendo

Present Tense – Simple or progressive

1. They normally _____ lunch at two. (**have**)
2. Are _____ in Paris this week? (**you work**)
3. You _____ new clothes every Saturday! (**buy**)
4. I played football at school but now I _____ swimming (**prefer**)
5. I _____ no idea what the book is about. Can you tell me what it's about? (**have**)
6. John _____ a difficult time at the university this year (**have**)
7. My father _____ everything about cars, but nothing about bicycles. (**know**)
8. The moon _____ round the earth. (**go**)
9. Do _____ those men at the door? – They _____ at us very strangely (**you see, look**)
10. We _____ that the contents of this letter should be changed. (**feel**)
11. They _____ lunch at the moment. – You shouldn't disturb them. (**have**)
12. The watch _____ to my grandmother. (**belong**)
13. I _____ what you _____ me but I don't agree with you (**hear, tell**)
14. This medicine _____ a new substance (**contain**)
15. These days we _____ tests at school. (**always have**)
16. Why _____ my coat? – Oh, I'm sorry. It _____ like mine! (**you wear, look**)
17. This cake _____ strange. What's in it? (**smell**)
18. Hi Jake. – What _____ at the moment? – I _____ the sunshine at the beach. (**you do, enjoy**)
19. Where _____ from? (**new neighbours, come**)
20. What _____ for a living? - He is a government official but he quit his job a few weeks ago. – And what _____ now? – At the moment he _____ for a new job. (**your Dad do, he do, look**)

Present Tense – Simple or progressive

1. They normally have lunch at two.
2. Are you working in Paris this week?
3. You buy new clothes every Saturday!
4. I played football at school but now I prefer swimming
5. I have no idea what the book is about. Can you tell me what it's about?
6. John is having a difficult time at the university this year
7. My father knows everything about cars, but nothing about bicycles.
8. The moon goes round the earth.
9. Do you see those men at the door? – They are looking at us very strangely
10. We feel that the contents of this letter should be changed.
11. They are having lunch at the moment. – You shouldn't disturb them.
12. The watch belongs to my grandmother.
13. I hear what you are telling me but I don't agree with you
14. This medicine contains a new substance
15. These days we are always having tests at school.
16. Why are you wearing my coat? – Oh, I'm sorry. It looks like mine!
17. This cake smells strange. What's in it?
18. Hi Jake. – What are you doing at the moment? – I am enjoying the sunshine at the beach.
19. Where do the new neighbours come from?
20. What does your Dad do for a living? - He is a government official but he quit his job a few weeks ago. – And what is he doing now? – At the moment he is looking for a new job.

Present Tense – Simple or Progressive: Fill in the correct form.

1. You can't see Tom now. He _____ a bath. (**have**)
2. He usually _____ coffee, but today he _____ tea. (**drink, drink**)
3. I won't go out now because it _____ and I _____ an umbrella. (**rain, not have**)
4. In Spain women usually _____ hats. (**not wear**)
5. Who _____ that terrible noise? It is John. He _____ his nose. (**make, blow**)
6. My dentist always keeps _____ me to clean my teeth. I hate that. (**tell**)
7. He never _____ to the theatre. (**go**)
8. I _____ this weekend in Eastbourne. I _____ there nearly every week. (**spend, go**)
9. My wife always keeps _____ for more money at the end of the week. (**ask**)
10. Who _____ to on the phone? (**you speak**)
11. Anne _____ all her clothes. At the moment she _____ a dress for herself. (**make, make**)
12. What's that smell? Something _____ in the kitchen. (**burn**)
13. I _____ overtime this month because I _____ up to buy a new car. (**work, save**)
14. He _____ thirty cigarettes a day but at the moment he _____ very hard to stop. (**smoke, try**)
15. The sun _____ in the east and _____ in the west. (**rise, set**)
16. She usually _____ languages very fast but she _____ problems with Chinese at the moment. (**learn, have**)
17. He never _____ to the theatre. (**go**)
18. Do _____ television every night? (**you watch**)
19. He always _____ his bills on time. (**pay**)
20. My father usually _____ his breakfast at eight. (**eat**)
21. How long _____ to get to the office? It _____ me half an hour. (**it take, take**)
22. The boat _____ Victoria Station at 9. (**leave**)
23. _____ how old I am? (**you know**)
24. Jane's husband _____. (**not smoke**)
25. It _____ in Egypt. (**not often rain**)
26. Florence _____ on the river Arno. (**lie**)
27. He usually _____ so quickly that I _____ him. (**speak, not understand**)
28. How _____ to work? – I usually _____ by car but tomorrow I _____ in Tom's car. (**you get, go, go**)
29. Why _____ on your raincoat? – I _____ for a walk. – _____ to come with me? (**you put, go, you want**)
30. I always _____ lottery tickets but I never _____. (**buy, win**)
31. _____ him? – I _____ him, but I _____ him. (**you love, like, not love**)
32. _____ him tonight? – Yes, I always _____ to him on his birthday. _____ to send him a message? (**you write, write, you want**)
33. That car _____ a very strange noise. _____ it's all right? – Oh yes, that noise _____. It always _____ a noise like that. (**make, you think, not matter, make**)
34. The plane that you _____ at now _____ for Paris. (**look, take off**)
35. What _____ to his car now? – I think he _____ it. (**he do, polish**)

Present Tense – Simple or Progressive: Key

1. You can't see Tom now. He ***is having*** a bath.
2. He usually ***drinks*** coffee, but today he ***is drinking*** tea.
3. I won't go out now because it ***is raining*** and I ***don't have*** an umbrella.
4. In Spain women usually ***do not wear*** hats.
5. Who ***is making*** that terrible noise? It is John. He ***is blowing*** his nose.
6. My dentist always keeps ***telling*** me to clean my teeth. I hate that.
7. He never ***goes*** to the theatre.
8. I ***am spending*** this weekend in Eastbourne. I ***go*** there nearly every week.
9. My wife always keeps ***asking*** for more money at the end of the week.
10. Who ***are you speaking*** to on the phone?
11. Anne ***makes*** all her clothes. At the moment she ***is making*** a dress for herself.
12. What's that smell? Something ***is burning*** in the kitchen.
13. I ***am working*** overtime this month because I ***am saving*** up to buy a new car.
14. He ***smokes*** thirty cigarettes a day but at the moment he ***is trying*** very hard to stop.
15. The sun ***rises*** in the east and ***sets*** in the west.
16. She usually ***learns*** languages very fast but she ***is having*** problems with Chinese at the moment.
17. He never ***goes*** to the theatre.
18. ***Do you watch*** television every night?
19. He always ***pays*** his bills on time.
20. My father usually ***eats*** his breakfast at eight.
21. How long ***does it take*** to get to the office? It ***takes*** me half an hour.
22. The boat ***leaves*** Victoria Station at 9.
23. ***Do you know*** how old I am?
24. Jane's husband ***does not smoke***.
25. It ***does not often rain*** in Egypt.
26. Florence ***lies*** on the river Arno.
27. He usually ***speaks*** so quickly that I ***don't understand*** him.
28. How ***do you get*** to work? – I usually ***go*** by car but tomorrow I ***am going*** in Tom's car.
29. Why ***are you putting*** on your raincoat? – I ***am going*** for a walk. – ***Do you want*** to come with me?
30. I always buy lottery tickets but I never win.
31. ***Do you love*** him? – I ***like*** him, but I ***don't love*** him.
32. ***Are you writing*** him tonight? – Yes, I always ***write*** to him on his birthday. Do you want to send him a message?
33. That car ***is making*** a very strange noise. ***Do you think*** it's all right? – Oh yes, that noise ***does not matter***. It always ***makes*** a noise like that.
34. The plane that you ***are looking*** at now ***is taking*** off for Paris.
35. What ***is he doing*** to his car now? – I think he ***is polishing*** it.

Fill in the correct form of the PRESENT TENSE (simple and progressive)

Dear Editor!

I _____ (**WRITE**) this letter because it _____ (**SEEM**) to me that far too many changes _____ (**TAKE**) place in my country these days, and, as a result, we _____ (**LOSE**) our identity.

I _____ (**LIVE**) in a small town but even this town _____ (**CHANGE**) before my eyes. For example, town authorities _____ (**BUILD**) a burger place where my favourite restaurant used to be. Our culture _____ (**BELONG**) to everybody, and I _____ (**NOT UNDERSTAND**) why the town leaders _____ (**NOT DO**) to preserve it. They simply _____ (**NOT CARE**).

In fact, I _____ (**THINK**) of starting an action group. I _____ (**APPEAR**) on a TV show on Friday evening to make people aware of how importance this issue is. It's time for us to start doing something before it _____ (**GET**) too late.

Fill in the correct form of the PRESENT TENSE (simple and progressive)

Dear Editor!

I **am writing** (WRITE) this letter because it **seems** (SEEM) to me that far too many changes **are taking** (TAKE) place in my country these days, and, as a result, we **are losing** (LOSE) our identity. I **live** (LIVE) in a small town but even this town **is changing** (CHANGE) before my eyes. For example, town authorities **are building** (BUILD) a burger place where my favourite restaurant used to be. Our culture **belongs** (BELONG) to everybody, and I **don't understand** (NOT UNDERSTAND) why the town leaders **aren't doing** (NOT DO) to preserve it. They simply **don't care** (NOT CARE).

In fact, I **am thinking** (THINK) of starting an action group. I **am appearing** (APPEAR) on a TV show on Friday evening to make people aware of how importance this issue is. It's time for us to start doing something before it **gets** (GET) too late.

Present Tense – Simple or Progressive: Fill in the correct form.

1. It often _____ in Ireland (**rain**).
2. _____ there now (**rain**)?
3. Susan _____ to her parents every Sunday night (**write**).
4. Stop at once! You _____ the flowers every time the ball _____ in the garden (**break, land**).
5. Where is Kevin? He _____ tennis with Sue. (**play**).
6. She normally _____ in Northbridge but she _____ with friends at the moment. (**live, stay**).
7. Hurry up, the teacher _____ to begin (**wait**).
8. I _____ a word Tim says (**not believe**).
9. The new lawnmower _____ well at the moment (**work**).
10. What _____ do for a living? (**you, do**).
11. As a secretary I _____ hundreds of letters every week (**write**).
12. My boss _____ to change jobs soon (**want**).
13. Look! She _____ in the non- smoking area (**smoke**).
14. We _____ our break now, Mr. Smith (**take**).
15. The well-known actor _____ a lot of fan mail (**get**).
16. Dorothy _____ to read a good novel in her holidays (**love**).
17. My brother _____ Italy the very moment I speak (**tour**).
18. Such bad behaviour _____ me mad (**make**).
19. He usually _____ out on Saturday night. (**go**).
20. She _____ by train to Liverpool today. (**depart**).
21. They _____ a game of cards right now. (**have**).
22. What _____, Mom? (**you bake**).
23. Songs that are not popular _____ very well (**not sell**).
24. I _____ a hat today because it is a special day (**wear**).
25. _____ to the bridge club? (**you belong**).
26. The car _____ oil. Can you fix it? (**lose**).
27. Our children _____ playing in the hut (**enjoy**).
28. The headmaster rarely _____ a class (**teach**).
29. _____ if I ask a question? (**you mind**).
30. I _____ some money because we _____ to Vienna for the weekend. (**save, travel**).
31. What _____? – It _____ forty euros (**this one – cost, cost**).
32. He never _____ to what you say. – He always keeps _____ about someone else (**listen, think**).
33. The boy and his father _____ a long conversation. – I wonder what they _____ about (**have, talk**).
34. Robert _____ the same bus every morning (**catch**).
35. At the moment they _____ in a small flat but they are looking for something else. (**live, look**).

Present Tense – Simple or Progressive: Fill in the correct form.

1. It often rains in Ireland (rain).
2. Is it raining there now (rain)?
3. Susan writes to her parents every Sunday night (write).
4. Stop at once! You break the flowers every time the ball lands in the garden (break, land)
5. Where is Kevin? He is playing tennis with Sue. (play)
6. She normally lives in Northbridge but she is staying with friends at the moment. (live, stay)
7. Hurry up, the teacher is waiting to begin (wait).
8. I do not believe a word Tim says (not believe).
9. The new lawnmower is working well at the moment (work)
10. What do you do for a living? (you, do)
11. As a secretary I write hundreds of letters every week (write).
12. My boss wants to change jobs soon (want)
13. Look! She is smoking in the non- smoking area (smoke)
14. We are taking our break now, Mr. Smith (take)
15. The well-known actor gets a lot of fan mail (get)
16. Dorothy loves to read a good novel in her holidays (love)
17. My brother is touring Italy the very moment I speak (tour)
18. Such bad behaviour makes me mad (make).
19. He usually goes out on Saturday night. (go)
20. She is departing by train to Liverpool today. (depart)
21. They are having a game of cards right now. (have)
22. What are you baking, Mom? (you bake)
23. Songs that are not popular do not sell very well (not sell)
24. I am wearing a hat today because it is a special day (wear)
25. Do you belong to the bridge club? (you belong)
26. The car is losing oil. Can you fix it? (lose)
27. Our children enjoy playing in the hut (enjoy)
28. The headmaster rarely teaches a class (teach)
29. Do you mind if I ask a question? (you mind)
30. I am saving some money because we are travelling to Vienna for the weekend. (save, travel)
31. What does this one cost ? – It costs forty euros (this one – cost, cost)
32. He never listens to what you say. – He always keeps thinking about someone else (listen, think)
33. The boy and his father are having a long conversation. – I wonder what they are talking about (have, talk)
34. Robert catches the same bus every morning (catch)
35. At the moment they are living in a small flat but they are looking for something else. (live, look)

Put the verb in brackets into the PRESENT SIMPLE or PRESENT CONTINUOUS tense!

Dear Mum,

I _____ (JUST WRITE) to tell you how much I _____ (APPRECIATE) the money you have sent me, and to tell you how I _____ (GET) on in my first term at university. In fact, I _____ (REALLY ENJOY) myself. I _____ (STUDY) quite hard as well, but at the moment I _____ (SPEND) a lot of time making new friends. I _____ (STILL STAY) with my friend Jill and I _____ (LOOK) for some place to live on my own. Only a small number of first year students _____ (LIVE) in college here and I _____ (SEEM) to be spending a lot of time travelling.

I _____ (ATTEND) lectures every morning, and most afternoons I _____ (STUDY) in the library. In fact, I _____ (WRITE) this letter right now instead of an essay on Shakespeare.

I think I'll buy some new clothes with the money you've sent me. Everything _____ (COST) a lot here, and I _____ (SAVE) to buy a coat for the winter months. It _____ (GET) really cold here in the evenings.

I now _____ (KNOW) some other students and we _____ (HAVE) quite a good time. I _____ (ALSO LEARN) to drive. University students _____ (GET) a refund if they take their tests here. I _____ (LOOK) forward to coming home next month. See you soon.

Kate

KEY

Put the verb in brackets into the PRESENT SIMPLE or PRESENT CONTINUOUS tense!

Dear Mum,

I am *just writing* (JUST WRITE) to tell you how much I *appreciate* (APPRECIATE) the money you have sent me, and to tell you how I *am getting* (GET) on in my first term at university. In fact, I *am really enjoying* (REALLY ENJOY) myself. I *am studying* (STUDY) quite hard as well, but at the moment I *am spending* (SPEND) a lot of time making new friends. I *am still staying* (STILL STAY) with my friend Jill and I *am looking* (LOOK) for some place to live on my own. Only a small number of first year students *live* (LIVE) in college here and I *seem* (SEEM) to be spending a lot of time travelling.

I *attend* (ATTEND) lectures every morning, and most afternoons I *study* (STUDY) in the library. In fact, I *am writing* (WRITE) this letter right now instead of an essay on Shakespeare.

I think I'll buy some new clothes with the money you've sent me. Everything *costs* (COST) a lot here, and I *am saving* (SAVE) to buy a coat for the winter months. It *gets* (GET) really cold here in the evenings.

I now *know* (KNOW) some other students and we *are having* (HAVE) quite a good time. I *am also learning* (ALSO LEARN) to drive. University students *get* (GET) a refund if they take their tests here. I *am looking* (LOOK) forward to coming home next month. See you soon.

Kate

Fill in the missing forms of the irregular verbs

Base form	Past Tense	Past Participle
arise		arisen
begin	began	
buy		bought
	caught	caught
deal		dealt
feed		fed
	found	found
	forgave	forgiven
get	got	
hang	hung	
	hid	hidden
keep		kept
lay		laid
	let	let
make	made	
pay		paid
put	put	put
	ran	run
	saw	seen
shake		shaken
sink	sank	
smell	smelled / smelt	
	spoke	spoken
swear		sworn
swing	swung	
teach	taught	
	told	told
throw	threw	
	won	won
write		written

Fill in the missing forms of the irregular verbs

Base form	Past Tense	Past Participle
arise	arose	arisen
begin	began	begun
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
deal	dealt	dealt
feed	fed	fed
find	found	found
forgive	forgave	forgiven
get	got	got/gotten
hang	hung	hung
hide	hid	hidden
keep	kept	kept
lay	laid	laid
let	let	let
make	made	made
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
run	ran	run
see	saw	seen
shake	shook	shaken
sink	sank	sunk
smell	smelled / smelt	smelled / smelt
speak	spoke	spoken
swear	swore	sworn
swing	swung	swung
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
throw	threw	thrown
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

Fill in the missing forms of the irregular verbs

Base form	Past Tense	Past Participle
bite	bit	
bleed		bled
	blew	blown
break	broke	
	built	built
come	came	
	cost	cost
	drew	drawn
dream		dreamt / dreamed
eat	ate	
fall	fell	
	flew	flown
forget	forgot	
	gave	given
grow	grew	
hear		heard
	hid	hidden
know	knew	
lead		led
lend	lent	
lie	lay	
	met	met
read		read
	said	said
sell	sold	
shine		shone
	shot	shot
sing	sang	
spend		spent
stand		stood
steal	stole	

Fill in the missing forms of the irregular verbs

Base form	Past Tense	Past Participle
bite	bit	bitten
bleed	bled	bled
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
build	built	built
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
draw	drew	drawn
dream	dreamt / dreamed	dreamt / dreamed
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgot/forgotten
give	gave	given
grow	grew	grown
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
know	knew	known
lead	led	led
lend	lent	lent
lie	lay	lain
meet	met	met
read	read	read
say	said	said
sell	sold	sold
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
sing	sang	sung
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen

Past Tense – Simple or progressive

1. It _____ (**rain**) when we _____ (**come**) out of the shopping centre.
2. It _____ (**happen**) very quickly. The car _____ (**come**) out of the side road and then the van _____ (**drive**) into the back of it.
3. I _____ (**be**) ill last week.
4. He _____ (**break**) his leg when he _____ (**ski**).
5. I _____ (**look**) out of the window and saw that people _____ (**walk**) in the park.
6. Emma _____ (**pass**) her exam a few weeks ago.
7. When we _____ (**see**) the spaceship we _____ (**stop**) the car.
8. When _____ (**you buy**) the car? – I _____ (**buy**) it a few years ago.
9. He _____ (**sit**) in the garden when a wasp _____ (**sting**) him in the nose.
10. Claire _____ (**go**) to Egypt last month.
11. She _____ (**have**) a beautiful dream when the alarm clock _____ (**ring**).
12. The car _____ (**stop**) at the lights.
13. We _____ (**drive**) home in the middle of the night when we _____ (**see**) a flashing light.
14. Soft music _____ (**play**) when I _____ (**go**) into the room.
15. _____ (**you buy**) that bag while I _____ (**look**) after the children?
16. It _____ (**be**) peaceful and the birds _____ (**sing**).
17. Was _____ (**Jimmy, already wait**) for you when you _____ (**get**) there?
18. I _____ (**ring**) at about 3 o'clock yesterday, but you _____ (**not pick**) up the phone. – What _____ (**you do**)? – I _____ (**help**) Dad in the garden so I probably _____ (**not hear**) it.
19. I _____ (**lie**) in the bath when the phone _____ (**ring**). It _____ (**stop**) after a few rings.
20. It _____ (**be**) cold when we _____ (**leave**) the house that day.

Past Tense – Simple or progressive

1. It was raining when we came out of the shopping centre.
2. It happened very quickly. The car came out of the side road and then the van drove into the back of it.
3. I was ill last week.
4. He broke his leg when he was skiing.
5. I looked out of the window and saw that people were walking in the park.
6. Emma passed her exam a few weeks ago.
7. When we saw the spaceship we stopped the car.
8. When did you buy the car? – I bought it a few years ago.
9. He was sitting in the garden when a wasp stung him in the nose.
10. Claire went to Egypt last month.
11. She was having a beautiful dream when the alarm clock rang.
12. The car stopped at the lights.
13. We were driving home in the middle of the night when we saw a flashing light.
14. Soft music was playing when I went into the room.
15. Did you buy that bag while I was looking after the children?
16. It was peaceful and the birds were singing.
17. Was Jimmy already waiting for you when you got there?
18. I rang at about 3 o'clock yesterday, but you didn't pick up the phone. – What were you doing? – I was helping Dad in the garden so I probably didn't hear it.
19. I was lying in the bath when the phone rang. It stopped after a few rings.
20. It was cold when we left the house that day.

Past Tense – Simple or Progressive: Fill in the correct form.

1. George _____ off the ladder while he _____ the ceiling. (**fall, paint**)
2. Last night I _____ in bed when I suddenly _____ a scream. (**read, hear**)
3. _____ TV when I _____ you? (**you watch, phone**)
4. Ann _____ for me when I _____. (**wait, arrive**)
5. Maisie _____ up the kitchen when John _____ her to marry him. (**clean, ask**)
6. The house _____ £ 150,000 in 2003. (**cost**)
7. The fire _____ at six in the morning. (**still burn**)
8. My brother _____ a new job a week ago (**get**).
9. Columbus _____ America over 500 years ago (**discover**)
10. She _____ not interested in the book because she _____ it (**be, not understand**)
11. _____ at school yesterday? (**you be**)
12. We _____ in a house near the sea last summer (**live**)
13. She _____ the piano very well when she _____ young (**can play, be**)
14. She _____ the office very early last night (**leave**).
15. I _____ a friend while I _____ the shopping (**meet, do**)
16. I _____ for my things when I _____ someone call my name (**pay, hear**)
17. I _____ around and _____ Judy. (**turn, see**)
18. She _____ a bright yellow dress when I _____ her last (**wear, see**)
19. We _____ to have a cup of tea. (**decide**)
20. While the waiter _____ up the pieces of glass he _____ his finger (**pick, cut**)
21. Then we _____ the cafe and _____ good bye (**leave, say**)
22. I _____ the fire at six and it _____ brightly when Tom came in at seven. (**light, still burn**)
23. My dog _____ along quietly when Mary's Pekinese _____ him. (**walk, attack**)
24. When I _____ she _____ lunch. She said she always _____ lunch at 12:30. (**arrive, have, have**)
25. What _____ of his last book? –I _____ it a lot (**you think, like**)
26. He suddenly _____ that he _____ in the wrong direction. (**realize, travel**)
27. He _____ guitar when someone _____ the window and _____ out a bucket of water. (**play, open, throw**)
28. He _____ us to go out in the boat yesterday because a strong wind _____ (**not allow, blow**)
29. The next day, as they _____ that the police _____ for them, they _____ the coats in the woods and _____ off in different directions. (**know, look, hide, go**)
30. When I _____ home they _____ around a fire. Jack _____ a crossword puzzle, Judy _____ and the others _____. Mother _____ at me and said : " Come and sit down" (**come, sit, do, knit, read, smile**)

Past Tense – Simple or Progressive: Fill in the correct form.

1. George **fell** off the ladder while he **was painting** the ceiling. (fall, paint)
2. Last night I **was reading** in bed when I suddenly **heard** a scream. (read, hear)
3. **Were you watching** TV when I **phoned** you? (watch, phone)
4. Ann **was waiting** for me when I **arrived**. (wait, arrive)
5. Maisie **was cleaning** up the kitchen when John **asked** her to marry him. (clean, ask)
6. The house **cost** £ 150,000 in 2003. (cost)
7. The fire **was still burning** at six in the morning. (still burn)
8. My brother **got** a new job a week ago (get).
9. Columbus **discovered** America over 500 years ago (discover)
10. She **was** not interested in the book because she **did not understand** it (be ,not understand)
11. **Were you** at school yesterday? (you be)
12. We **lived** in a house near the sea last summer (live)
13. She **could play** the piano very well when she **was** young (can play, be)
14. She **left** the office very early last night (leave).
15. I **met** a friend while I **was doing** the shopping (meet, do)
16. I **was paying** for my things when I **heard** someone call my name (pay, hear)
17. I **turned** around and **saw** Judy. (turn, see)
18. She **was wearing** a bright yellow dress when I **saw** her last (wear, see)
19. We **decided** to have a cup of tea. (decide)
20. While the waiter **was picking** up the pieces of glass he **cut** his finger (pick, cut)
21. Then we **left** the cafe and **said** good bye (leave, say)
22. I **lit** the fire at six and it **was still burning** brightly when Tom came in at seven. (light, burn)
23. My dog **was walking** along quietly when Mary's Pekinese **attacked** him. (walk, attack)
24. When I **arrived** she **was having** lunch. She said she always **had** lunch at 12:30. (arrive, have, have)
25. What **do you think** of his last book? –I **liked** it a lot (think, like)
26. He suddenly **realized** that he **was travelling** in the wrong direction. (realize, travel)
27. He **was playing** guitar when someone **opened** the window and **threw** out a bucket of water. (play, open, throw)
28. He **did not allow** us to go out in the boat yesterday because a strong wind **was blowing** (not allow, blow)
29. The next day, as they **knew** that the police **were looking** for them, they **hid** the coats in the woods and **went** off in different directions. (know, look, hide, go)
30. When I **came** home they **were** all **sitting** around a fire. Jack **was doing** a crossword puzzle, Judy **was knitting** and the others **were reading**. Mother **smiled** at me and said : “ Come and sit down” (come, sit, do, knit, read, smile)

Past Tense – Simple or Progressive: Fill in the correct form

1. I _____ Sue in town yesterday, but she _____ me. She _____ the other way. (**see, not see, look**)
2. I _____ Tom and Jane at the airport a few weeks ago. They _____ to Berlin and I _____ to Madrid. We _____ a chat while we _____ for our flights. (**meet, go, go, have, wait**)
3. I _____ home yesterday when suddenly a man _____ out into the road in front of me. I _____ quite fast but luckily I _____ to stop in time and _____ him. (**cycle, step, go, manage, not hit**)
4. Jerry _____ for me when I _____. (**wait, arrive**)
5. "What _____ at this time yesterday?" – "I was asleep." (**you do**)
6. " _____ out last night?" – "No, I was too tired". (**you go**)
7. "Was Carol at the party last night?" – "Yes she _____ a really nice dress." (**wear**)
8. How fast _____ when the accident _____ ? (**you drive, happen**)
9. John _____ a photo of me while I _____. (**take, not look**)
10. We _____ in a very difficult position. We _____ what to do. (**be, not know**)
11. I haven't seen Alan for ages. When I last _____ him, he _____ to find a job in Leeds (**see, try**)
12. I _____ along the street when suddenly I _____ footsteps behind me. Somebody _____ me. I was frightened and _____ to run. (**walk, hear, follow, start**)
13. When I _____ young I _____ to be a bus driver. (**be, want**)
14. While Mike _____ TV Sheila _____ a book. (**watch, read**)
15. She _____ for the bus when I _____ her yesterday. (**wait, see**)
16. On Sunday I _____ for a walk and then I _____ the museum. (**go, visit**)
17. He _____ lunch when the first guests _____. (**prepare, arrive**)
18. She _____ when she suddenly _____ a strange noise. (**sleep, hear**)
19. We _____ on the lake when a terrible thunderstorm _____ up. (**sail, come**)
20. Some minutes later his friend _____ to take him to the airport. (**come**)
21. While his friend _____ the car, John _____ about his holidays. (**drive, talk**)
22. John _____ a shower when the telephone _____. (**have, ring**)
23. When they _____ at the airport, the plane _____ high above their heads. (**arrive, already fly**)
24. They _____ to the restaurant and _____ a cup of coffee. (**go, have**)
25. While the football teams _____ up, the fans _____ their flags. (**warm, wave**)

Past Tense – Simple or Progressive: Fill in the correct form

1. I saw Sue in town yesterday, but she didn't see me. She was looking the other way.
2. I met Tom and Jane at the airport a few weeks ago. They were going to Berlin and I was going to Madrid. We had a chat while we were waiting for our flights.
3. I was cycling home yesterday when suddenly a man stepped out into the road in front of me. I was going quite fast but luckily I managed to stop in time and didn't hit him.
4. Jerry was waiting for me when I arrived.
5. "What were you doing at this time yesterday?" – "I was asleep."
6. "Did you go out last night?" – "No, I was too tired".
7. "Was Carol at the party last night?" – "Yes she was wearing a really nice dress."
8. How fast were you driving when the accident happened?
9. John took a photo of me while I was not looking.
10. We were in a very difficult position. We didn't know what to do.
11. I haven't seen Alan for ages. When I last saw him, he was trying to find a job in Leeds
12. I was walking along the street when suddenly I heard footsteps behind me. Somebody was following me. I was frightened and started to run.
13. When I was young I wanted to be a bus driver.
14. While Mike was watching TV Sheila was reading a book.
15. She was waiting for the bus when I saw her yesterday.
16. On Sunday I went for a walk and then I visited the museum.
17. He was preparing lunch when the first guests arrived.
18. She was sleeping when she suddenly heard a strange noise.
19. We were sailing on the lake when a terrible thunderstorm came up.
20. Some minutes later his friend came to take him to the airport.
21. While his friend was driving the car, John was talking about his holidays.
22. John was having a shower when the telephone rang.
23. When they arrived at the airport, the plane was already flying high above their heads.
24. They went to the restaurant and had a cup of coffee.
25. While the football teams were warming up, the fans were waving their flags.

Fill in the correct form of the Present Perfect tense!

1. The earth _____ here for billions of years (**be**).
2. We _____ cards for the last few hours (**play**).
3. We _____ problems with our new car recently (**have**)
4. _____ on anything interesting lately ?(**you work**)
5. Cuba _____ a socialist country since 1959 (**be**)
6. I _____ care of my neighbour's cats while they are away (**take**)
7. I _____ my car for three years (**have**).
8. _____ an important fight? (**the boxer , ever, win**)
9. John and Mary _____ with each other since the day they got married (**quarrel**).
10. It _____ hard since last night (**rain**).
11. I'm tired because I _____ well lately. (**not feel**)
12. _____ your problems? (**your parents, always, understand**)
13. The patient _____ penicillin for several days now (**take**)
14. A big earthquake _____ San Francisco since 1906. (**not hit**)
15. They _____ in San Francisco since they arrived in the USA 20 years ago. (**live**)
16. He got ill five weeks ago and _____ yet. (**not recover**)
17. Everyone in the Middle East _____ about the situation for decades (**worry**).
18. We _____ very cold weather this year (**have**)
19. Where _____ the money? (**you, hide**)
20. At last ,my favourite team _____ against its most important rival (**win**)
21. I _____ for 6 years. (**marry**)
22. Dad _____ a number of jobs in the last few years (**have**).
23. The bank is still closed. It _____ yet. (**not open**)
24. Our daughter _____ lipstick since she was 16 (**wear**).
25. She is angry because her boyfriend _____ up yet and she _____ for half an hour. (**not show, wait**).
26. I'm still waiting for an answer. They _____ up their minds yet. (**not make**)
27. How many times _____ the cat today? (**Kim feed**)
28. The kids _____ on my nerves. They _____ too much noise (**get, make**).
29. My company _____ a lot of money in the last few years. They _____ hard on an important project. (**make, work**).
30. They _____ our new refrigerator yet, but they will any day now. (**not deliver**)

Fill in the correct form of the Present Perfect tense!

1. The earth **has been** here for billions of years (**be**).
2. We **have been playing** cards for the last few hours (**play**).
3. We **have been having / have had** problems with our new car recently (**have**).
4. **Have you been working** on anything interesting lately? (**you work**)
5. Cuba **has been** a socialist country since 1959 (**be**).
6. I **have been taking** care of my neighbour's cats while they are away (**take**).
7. I **have had** my car for three years (**have**).
8. **Has the boxer ever won** an important fight? (**the boxer , ever, win**)
9. John and Mary **have been quarrelling** with each other since the day they got married (**quarrel**).
10. It **has been raining** hard since last night (**rain**).
11. I'm tired because I **haven't been feeling** well lately. (**not feel**)
12. **Have your parents always understood** your problems? (**your parents, always, understand**)
13. The patient **has been taking** penicillin for several days now (**take**).
14. A big earthquake **has not hit** San Francisco since 1906. (**not hit**)
15. They **have been living** in San Francisco since they arrived in the USA 20 years ago. (**live**)
16. He got ill five weeks ago and **has not recovered** yet. (**not recover**)
17. Everyone in the Middle East **has been worrying** about the situation for decades (**worry**).
18. We **have had/ have been having** very cold weather this year (**have**)
19. Where **have you hidden** the money? (**you, hide**)
20. At last ,my favourite team **has won** against its most important rival (**win**)
21. I **have been married** for 6 years. (**marry**)
22. Dad **has had** a number of jobs in the last few years (**have**).
23. The bank is still closed. It **hasn't opened** yet. (**not open**)
24. Our daughter **has been wearing** lipstick since she was 16 (**wear**).
25. She is angry because her boyfriend **has not shown** up yet and she **has been waiting** for half an hour. (**not show, wait**).
26. I'm still waiting for an answer. They **haven't made** up their minds yet. (**not make**)
27. How many times **has Kim fed** the cat today? (**Kim feed**)
28. The kids **have been getting** on my nerves. They **have been making** too much noise (**get, make**).
29. My company **has been making** a lot of money in the last few years. They **have been working** hard on an important project. (**make, work**).
30. They **haven't delivered** our new refrigerator yet, but they will any day now. (**not deliver**)

Past or Present Perfect Tense – Simple form

1. The weather _____ (**be**) awful in the past few days.
2. We _____ (**wash**) the dishes. They're clean now.
3. _____ (**your course, start**) yet?
4. Emma _____ (**pack**) her suitcase last night.
5. They _____ (**close**) the factory. – Really? When _____ (**that happen**) ?
6. Shall we play tennis? We _____ (**not play**) since we were children.
7. The airplane _____ (**land**) . The pilot is just getting out.
8. Prices _____ (**go**) up. Everything is more expensive this year.
9. I'm tired. We _____ (**walk**) 10 miles.
10. The Queen _____ (**arrive**) in an RAF helicopter last night.
11. How long _____ (**Vicky, have**) that camera? – For about a month.
12. We _____ (**just come**) back from our holidays.
13. Your parcel _____ (**arrive**). The postman _____ (**bring**) it two hours ago.
14. He _____ (**be**) at his computer for two hours.
15. We _____ (**live**) there for ten years but we _____ (**be**) in Birmingham for the last two.
16. We _____ (**not have**) a party for ages.
17. My sister's car is only a year old but she _____ (**already crash**) it.
18. Dinosaurs _____ (**roam**) the earth millions of years ago.
19. It _____ (**not rain**) yet today.
20. _____ (**you see**) last week's magazine? - It must be here somewhere.

Past or Present Perfect Tense – Simple form

1. The weather has been awful in the past few days.
2. We have washed the dishes. They're clean now.
3. Has your course started yet?
4. Emma packed her suitcase last night.
5. They have closed the factory. – Really? When did that happen?
6. Shall we play tennis? We haven't played since we were children.
7. The airplane has landed. The pilot is just getting out.
8. Prices have gone up. Everything is more expensive this year.
9. I'm tired. We have walked 10 miles.
10. The Queen arrived in an RAF helicopter last night.
11. How long has Vicky had that camera? – For about a month.
12. We have just come back from our holidays.
13. Your parcel has arrived. The postman brought it two hours ago.
14. He's been at his computer for two hours.
15. We lived there for ten years but we've been in Birmingham for the last two.
16. We haven't had a party for ages.
17. My sister's car is only a year old but she has already crashed it.
18. Dinosaurs roamed the earth millions of years ago.
19. It hasn't rained yet today.
20. Did you see last week's magazine? - It must be here somewhere.

Past or Present Perfect Tense – Simple form

1. The President _____ (**just come**) out of the building and will make a speech in a moment.
2. _____ (**you ever be**) to America?
3. _____ (**Churchill ever go**) to America? – No, not that I know of.
4. _____ (**you see**) this week's magazine?
5. _____ (**you wash**) the car yet? – No, I haven't. But I _____ (**already mow**) the lawn.
6. We _____ (**not have**) many visitors last year; we _____ (**have**) a lot more this year.
7. The last time I _____ (**go**) to Brighton was in August.
8. A few days ago I _____ (**learn**) that someone is planning to tear down the old building.
9. We _____ (**always be**) poor. We _____ (**never have**) any money.
10. I love this film. I think it's the fourth time I _____ (**see**) it.
11. It _____ (**be**) very dry so far this week, but it _____ (**rain**) a lot last week.
12. I would like to meet a ghost but I _____ (**never see**) one before.
13. Marylyn Monroe _____ (**play**) in about 30 films.
14. _____ (**you ever bake**) your own bread? –Yes I _____ (**try**) it when I _____ (**be**) in high school but I _____ (**not bake**) anything since then.
15. Janet _____ (**be**) very ill three years ago.
16. We _____ (**move**) here in 1993. We _____ (**be**) here for a long time now.
17. Two people _____ (**die**) in a fire on Elm Street last night.
18. It _____ (**take**) ages to repair the car. I'm glad we're finished now.
19. I _____ (**find**) the wallet I _____ (**lose**) yesterday.
20. The runner _____ (**break**) the world record in Frankfurt. Two days later he _____ (**run**) even faster.

Past or Present Perfect Tense – Simple form

1. The President has just come out of the building and will make a speech in a moment.
2. Have you ever been to America?
3. Did Churchill ever go to America? – No, not that I know of.
4. Have you seen this week's magazine?
5. Have you washed the car yet? – No, I haven't. But I have already mowed the lawn.
6. We didn't have many visitors last year; we've had a lot more this year.
7. The last time I went to Brighton was in August.
8. A few days ago I learned that someone is planning to tear down the old building.
9. We have always been poor. We have never had any money.
10. I love this film. I think it's the fourth time I've seen it.
11. It has been very dry so far this week, but it rained a lot last week.
12. I would like to meet a ghost but I have never seen one before.
13. Marylyn Monroe played in about 30 films.
14. Have you ever baked your own bread? –Yes I tried it when I was in high school but I haven't baked anything since then.
15. Janet was very ill three years ago.
16. We moved here in 1993. We' have been here for a long time now.
17. Two people died in a fire on Elm Street last night.
18. It took ages to repair the car. I'm glad we're finished now.
19. I have found the wallet I lost yesterday.
20. The runner broke the world record in Frankfurt. Two days later he an even faster.

Past or Past Perfect Tense – Simple: Fill in the correct form.

1. Mary _____ (**give**) me Tony's address before she left.
2. When the boys arrived at the cinema, the film _____ (**already, start**).
3. Before we reached the station we saw that we _____ (**lose**) our way.
4. All the tickets _____ (**be**) sold before the concert began.
5. They took a shower after they _____ (**finish**) the game.
6. I asked Mr Green how many books he _____ (**read**).
7. Mum asked me why I _____ (**not tidy**) up my room.
8. Bob was sorry that he _____ (**told**) me the story.
9. Alan watched TV after he _____ (**have**) lunch.
10. The sun _____ (**shine**) yesterday after it _____ (**be**) cold for many weeks.
11. Uncle David _____ (**go**) to the doctor after he _____ (**be**) ill for a month.
12. Before the police _____ (**catch**) the thief, he _____ (**steal**) two more watches.
13. Mum once _____ (**paint**) a picture although she _____ (**never, learn**) it.
14. I _____ (**not tell**) my teacher that my mum _____ (**help**) me with my homework.
15. I _____ (**be**) very angry when I _____ (**see**) that my brother _____ (**eat**) my apple.
16. The bike _____ (**be**) much more expensive than he _____ (**think**) at first.
17. Dad _____ (**drive**) me home after I _____ (**fall**) into the water.
18. Marion _____ (**ask**) me what _____ (**happen**) to me last week.
19. We _____ (**eat**) two Big Macs before we _____ (**go**) home.
20. Paul _____ (**not say**) that he _____ (**take**) Albert's watch.
21. The days _____ (**become**) colder after it _____ (**snow**).
22. Martin _____ (**tell**) me that he _____ (**be**) in London.
23. I _____ (**feel**) great after I _____ (**pass**) the exam.
24. It _____ (**be**) Freddy who _____ (**clean**) the room.
25. When I _____ (**get**) off the bike I _____ (**see**) that one of those tires _____ (**lose**) air.
26. I _____ (**be**) sorry that I _____ (**not be**) nicer to him.
27. Nobody _____ (**come**) to the meeting because Angela _____ (**forget**) to tell them about it.
28. I know that I _____ (**see**) her somewhere before.
29. Because she _____ (**not check**) the oil for so long, the car _____ (**break**) down.
30. She couldn't find the book that I _____ (**lend**) her.
31. They never _____ (**never find**) where he _____ (**hide**) the money.
32. It was a firm that I _____ (**never hear**) of.
33. When she _____ (**come**) in we all knew where she _____ (**be**).
34. The lesson _____ (**already start**) when I _____ (**arrive**).
35. When I _____ (**get**) to the park I found out that I _____ (**lose**) my keys.
36. She told me that she _____ (**work**) in Germany.
37. When he _____ (**paint**) the kitchen he _____ (**decide**) to have a rest.
38. After I _____ (**finish**) the report, I saw that it _____ (**be**) too late.

Past or Past Perfect Tense – Simple: Fill in the correct form.

1. Mary had given me Tony's address before she left.
2. When the boys arrived at the cinema, the film had already started ,
3. Before we reached the station we saw that we had lost our way.
4. All the tickets had been sold before the concert began.
5. They took a shower after they had finished the game.
6. I asked Mr. Green how many books he had read
7. Mum asked me why I had not tidied up my room.
8. Bob was sorry that he had told me the story.
9. Alan watched TV after he had had lunch.
10. The sun shone yesterday after it had been cold for many weeks.
11. Uncle David went to the doctor after he had been ill for a month.
12. Before the police caught the thief, he had stolen two more watches.
13. Mum once painted a picture although she had never learnt it.
14. I did not tell my teacher that my mum had helped me with my homework.
15. I was very angry when I saw that my brother had eaten my apple.
16. The bike was much more expensive than he had thought at first.
17. Dad drove me home after I had fallen into the water.
18. Marion asked me what had happened to me last week.
19. We had eaten two Big Macs before we went home.
20. Paul did not say that he had taken Albert's watch.
21. The days became colder after it had snowed.
22. Martin told me that he had been in London.
23. I felt great after I had passed the exam.
24. It was Freddy who had cleaned the room.
25. When I got off the bike I saw that one of those tires had lost air.
26. I was sorry that I had not been nicer to him.
27. Nobody came to the meeting because Angela had forgotten to tell them about it.
28. I know that I had seen her somewhere before.
29. Because she had not checked the oil for so long, the car broke down.
30. She couldn't find the book that I had lent her.
31. They never found where he had hidden the money.
32. It was a firm that I had never heard of.
33. When she came in we all knew where she had been
34. The lesson had already started when I arrived.
35. When I got to the park I found out that I had lost my keys.
36. She told me that she had worked in Germany.
37. When he had painted the kitchen he decided to have a rest.
38. After I had finished the report, I saw that it was too late.

CONDITIONAL TENSE AND SENTENCES

Conditional Simple

Use

We use it for something that might happen.

We use it in the main clause in type II of the Conditional sentences.

Form

would + infinitive

Example

I **would fly** to Sydney if I had the money.

Conditional Sentences

GRAMMAR BOX:

TYPE I

If + simple present / future

Example: If you study more, you will pass the exam.

Si estudias más, aprobarás el examen.

TYPE II

If + simple past / conditional (would + infinitive)

Example: If you studied more, you would pass the exam.

Si estudiaras más, aprobarías el examen.

TYPE III

If + past perfect / perfect conditional

Example: If you had studied more, you would have passed the exam.

Si hubieras estudiado más, habrías aprobado el examen.

1. Write the verbs in brackets into the gaps. Conditional I.

Example: If I ___ **(to go)** to the cinema, I _____ **(to watch)** an interesting film.

Answer: If I **go** to the cinema, I **will watch** an interesting film.

1. If I _____ **(to learn)**, I _____ **(to pass)** the exams.
2. We _____ **(not/to swim)** if the weather _____ **(to be)** bad.
3. If he _____ **(to have)** a temperature, he _____ **(to see)** the doctor.
4. I _____ **(to be)** very happy if my friends _____ **(to come)**.
5. If I _____ **(to earn)** a lot of money, I _____ **(to fly)** to New York.
6. If we _____ **(not/to come)** home in time, we _____ **(to miss)** the film.
7. The teacher _____ **(not/to be)** happy if I _____ **(to forget)** my homework again.
8. If our class _____ **(to go)** to England, I _____ **(to visit)** the Tower of London.

2. Write the verbs in brackets into the gaps. Conditional II.

Example: If I _____ **(to go)** to the cinema, I _____ **(to watch)** an interesting film.

Answer: If I **went** to the cinema, I **would watch** an interesting film.

1. If they _____ **(to have)** enough money, they _____ **(to buy)** a new car.
2. If he _____ **(to be)** my friend, I _____ **(to invite)** him.
3. The Smiths _____ **(to go)** on holiday if they _____ **(to have)** time.
4. If Susan _____ **(to learn)** more, she _____ **(to be)** better at school.
5. We _____ **(to call)** the police if we _____ **(to see)** a burglar.

6. If the pupils _____ (**to have**) no school, they _____ (**to play**) football.
7. If I _____ (**to come**) home early, my father _____ (**not/to be**) angry.
8. If I _____ (**to be**) you, I _____ (**not/to go**) to the party.

**3. Write the verbs in brackets in their correct forms into the gaps.
Types I and II.**

Example: If I went to the cinema, I _____ (**to watch**) an interesting film.

Answer: If I went to the cinema, I **would watch** an interesting film.

1. If they had enough money, they _____ (**to buy**) a new car.
2. If it rains, I _____ (**not/to play**) football.
3. I _____ (**to phone**) you if I see you today.
4. We _____ (**to pass**) the exam if we learned more.
5. I would go to the party if you _____ (**to come**) with me.
6. If they buy the cat, their children _____ (**to be**) happy.
7. You will catch a cold if you _____ (**not/to wear**) a pullover.
8. If I _____ (**to see**) the film, I wouldn't buy the video.

4. Put the verbs in brackets into the gaps. Form a Conditional sentence - type III.

Example: If I _____ (**to go**) to the cinema, I _____ (**to watch**) an interesting film.

Answer: If I **had gone** to the cinema, I **would have watched** an interesting film.

1) If the weather _____ (**to be**) nice, they _____ (**to play**) football.

2) If we _____ (**to go**) to a good restaurant, we _____ (**to have**) a better dinner.

3) If John _____ (**to learn**) more words, he _____ (**to write**) a good report.

4) If the boys _____ (**to take**) the bus to school, they _____ (**to arrive**) on time.

5) If the teacher (**to explain**) the homework, I (**to do**) it.

6) If they (**to wait**) for another 10 minutes, they (**to see**) the pop star.

7) If the police (**to come**) earlier, they (**to arrest**) the burglar.

8) If you (**to buy**) fresh green vegetable, your salad (**to taste**) better.

9) If Alex (**to ask**) me, I (**to email**) the documents.

10) If he (**to speak**) more slowly, Peggy (**to understand**) him.

5. Conditional sentences, all types.

Put in the correct phrases and form a **conditional sentence (type I, II, III)**. Watch the **underlined** verbs.

Example: If he **had studied** harder, he _____ (**to pass**) his driving test.

Answer: If he **had studied** harder, he **would have passed** his driving test.

1) If we **meet** at 9:30, we (**to have**) plenty of time.

2) Lisa **would find** the milk if she (**to look**) in the fridge.

3) The zookeeper **would have punished** her with a fine if she (**to feed**) the animals.

4) If you **spoke** louder, your classmates (**to understand**) you.

5) Dan (**to arrive**) safe if he **drove** slowly.

6) You (**to have**) no trouble at school if you **had done** your homework.

7) If you (**to swim**) in this lake, you'**ll shiver** from cold.

8) The door **will unlock** if you (**to press**) the green button.

9) If Mel (**to ask**) her teacher, he'**d have answered** her questions.

10) I (**to call**) the office if I **was/were** you.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES EXERCISES.

ANSWERS

1. Write the verbs in brackets into the gaps in Conditional I. Use the will-future in the main clause.

1. If I **learn** , I **will pass** the exams.
2. We **will not swim** if the weather **is** bad.
3. If he **has** a temperature, he **will see** the doctor.
4. I **will be** very happy if my friends **come**.
5. If I **earn** a lot of money, I **will fly** to New York.
6. If we **don't come** home in time, we **will miss** the film.
7. The teacher **won't be** happy if I **forget** my homework again.
8. If our class **goes** to England, I **will visit** the Tower of London.

2. Write the verbs in brackets into the gaps in Conditional II.

1. If they **had** enough money, they **would buy** a new car.
2. If he **was/were** my friend, I **would invite** him.
3. The Smiths **would go** on holiday if they **had** time.
4. If Susan **learned** more, she **would be** better at school.
5. We **would call** the police if we **saw** a burglar.
6. If the pupils **had** no school, they **would play** football.
7. If I **came** home early, my father **would not be** angry.
8. If I **was/were** you, I **would not go** to the party.

3. Write the verbs in brackets in the correct forms into the gaps. Types I and II.

1. WOULD

2. WILL NOT

3. WILL NOT

4. WOULD PASS

5. CAME

6. WILL BE

7. DON'T WEAR

8. SAW

4. Put the verbs in brackets into the gaps. Form a Conditional sentence – type III.

1. If the weather **had been** nice, they **would have played** football.
2. If we **had gone** to a good restaurant, we **would have had** a better dinner.
3. If John **had learned** more words, he **would have written** a good report.
4. If the boys **had taken** the bus to school, they **would have arrived** on time.
5. If the teacher **had explained** the homework, I **would have done** it.
6. If they **had waited** for another 10 minutes, they **would have seen** the pop star.
7. If the police **had come** earlier, they **would have arrested** the burglar.
8. If you **had bought** fresh green vegetables, your salad **would have tasted** better.
9. If Alex **had asked** me, I **would have emailed** the documents.
10. If he **had spoken** more slowly, Peggy **would have understood** him.

5. Conditional sentences, all types.

1. WILL HAVE

2. LOOKED

3. HAD FED

4. WOULD UNDERSTAND

5. WOULD ARRIVE

6. WOULD HAVE HAD

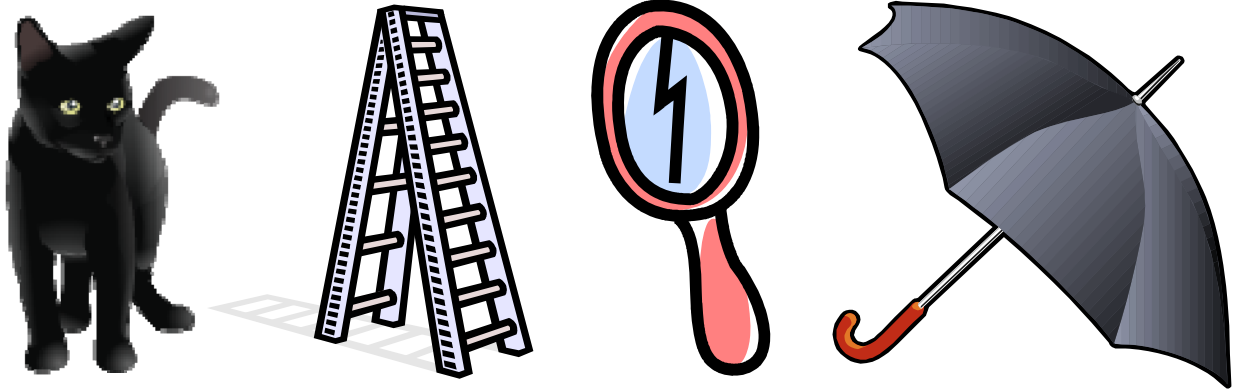
7. SWIM

8. PRESS

9. HAD ASKED

10. WOULD CALL

1. What do you think of when you see these pictures?



2. What is a superstition?

Match the beginnings and the endings of the superstitions.

1. If you see a black cat,

a) the weather will be bad later in the day.

2. If the sky is red in the morning,

b) you'll have bad luck.

3. If the palm of your right hand itches,

c) you'll have good luck.

4. If you open an umbrella indoors,

d) you'll have seven years' bad luck.

5. If you break a mirror,

e) you'll get some money.

Do people have the same superstitions in your country?

3. First conditional

The sentences above predict the consequences of everyday events. They use the first conditional.

What form of the verb do we use in the 'if' clause?

What form of the verb do we use in the consequence?

4. Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs.

walk be form put have bring

1. If the sky red tonight, the weather will be fine tomorrow.
2. If you peel an apple and drop the skin on the floor, it the first letter of your future husband/wife's name.
3. You'll have bad luck if you under a ladder.
4. The fairies you money if you leave your teeth under your pillow.
5. You bad luck if you spill salt on the floor.
6. If you new shoes on the table, you'll have bad luck.

Do people have the same superstitions in your country?

5. Complete the superstitions. If you don't know the 'real' answers, invent your own!

1. If you eat an apple a day, ...
2. You'll have good luck if ...
3. You'll find a pot of gold if ...
4. If you whistle, ...
5. If you drop a fork, ...
6. You'll have bad luck if ...



Name: _____

Conditional Sentences

1 Choose the correct form to make conditional sentences.

- 1 If I see Mark tomorrow, I *tell / will tell* him the news.
- 2 We *won't travel / wouldn't travel* by train if the ticket prices go up.
- 3 If you *visit / will visit* Florence, you will have a great time.
- 4 I would go to the cinema with you if you *got / would get* here on time.
- 5 If Jonathan *would have saved / had saved* a backup copy on a diskette, he wouldn't have lost all his work.
- 6 If we *had had / had* longer holidays, we would have gone to Paris.
- 7 If we *had had / had* longer holidays, we would go to Paris.
- 8 If you had warned him earlier, he *could avoid / could have avoided* the traffic jam.
- 9 If we had more money, we *could buy / could have bought* more books at the fair.
- 10 If the weather doesn't change, we *won't be able to go / aren't able to go* to the beach.

2 Complete the conditional sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 World history might have been different if Babbage _____ (finish) building his machine.
- 2 If you go to the National History Museum after 4.30, you _____ (not / have) to pay.
- 3 If there _____ (be) only one player left, he has to go.
- 4 She would have laughed if you _____ (tell) her what happened last night.
- 5 If you get off at Marble Arch, you _____ (see) a large white triumphal arch near Hyde Park.
- 6 In Victorian times, people _____ (can / not / enter) if they were not well dressed.
- 7 If you read *Time Out*, you _____ (know) what is happening in London at the moment.
- 8 If I had looked right when crossing the street, I _____ (not / have) an accident.
- 9 If you _____ (not / give) me that back, I'll arrest you.
- 10 If I _____ (be) you, I _____ (travel) to London.

- 1 will tell
2 won't travel
3 visit
4 got
5 had saved
6 had had
7 had
8 could have avoided
9 could buy
10 won't be able to go
- 2
- 1 had finished
2 do not have
3 is
4 had told
5 will see
6 could not enter
7 will / would know
8 wouldn't have had
9 don't give
10 were; would travel

Conditional Sentences

KEY

Perfect-English-Grammar

Conditionals

Finish the sentences with a clause in the correct conditional:

- 1: If it is sunny tomorrow _____
- 2: If you sit in the sun too long _____
- 3: If I were you _____
- 4: If I were the Prime Minister _____
- 5: If she had studied harder _____
- 6: If I won the lottery _____
- 7: If I hadn't gone to bed so late _____
- 8: If I hadn't come to London _____
- 9: If you mix water and electricity _____
- 10: If she hadn't stayed at home _____
- 11: If I go out tonight _____
- 12: If I were on holiday today _____
- 13: If I had listened to my mother _____
- 14: If I hadn't eaten so much _____
- 15: If it rains later _____
- 16: If I were British _____
- 17: If I were the opposite sex _____
- 18: If I have enough money _____
- 19: If you don't wear a coat in the winter _____
- 20: If I weren't studying English _____

Possible answers (check your answer is in the same tense):

- 1: If it is sunny tomorrow, we'll go to the park.
- 2: If you sit in the sun too long , you get burned.
- 3: If I were you, I would go out tonight.
- 4: If I were the Prime Minister, I would make the museums free.
- 5: If she had studied harder, she would have passed the exam.
- 6: If I won the lottery, I would buy a big house.
- 7: If I hadn't gone to bed so late, I wouldn't have been tired.
- 8: If I hadn't come to London, I would have gone to New York.
- 9: If you mix water and electricity, you get a shock.
- 10: If she hadn't stayed at home, she would have gone shopping.
- 11: If I go out tonight, I'll go to the cinema.
- 12: If I were on holiday today, I would go to the beach.
- 13: If I had listened to my mother, I wouldn't have caught a cold.
- 14: If I hadn't eaten so much, I wouldn't have felt sick.
- 15: If it rains later, I won't go out.
- 16: If I were British, I would speak perfect English.
- 17: If I were the opposite sex, I would grow a beard.
- 18: If I have enough money, I'll buy some new shoes.
- 19: If you don't wear a coat in the winter, you get sick.
- 20: If I weren't studying English, I would study French.

If or Unless?

Unless means *only if* or *except if* (*a menos que* in Spanish). The second part of the sentence gives the possible result.

"You can't go on vacation **unless** you save some money."

"**If** you **don't** save some money, you can't go on vacation."

"You'll never understand English **unless** you study grammar carefully".

"You'll never understand English **if** you **don't** study grammar carefully".

Unless can be used in all three types of Conditional Sentences though it is more common in Type 1.

Exercise 1: Match the beginnings of the sentences to the correct endings.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. You can't watch television in the UK... | a. ...unless you're going to be late. |
| 2. Don't tell her what happened... | b. ...unless she asks you. |
| 3. You don't have to call me... | c. ...unless they are with an adult. |
| 4. We're going for a picnic tomorrow... | d. ...unless they talk to him first. |
| 5. Children are not allowed into the cinema... | e. ...unless they give me a discount. |
| 6. You have to pay to enter the exhibition... | f. ...unless it rains. |
| 7. Michael's quite shy. He doesn't talk to people... | g. ...unless you have a licence. |
| 8. I'm not buying that computer... | h. ...unless you are over 65 years old. |

unless your name is

 stop acting as if you know
 EVERYTHING!



Exercise 2: Correct or wrong? Read the sentences and decide whether they are correct or wrong, either in grammar or meaning.

1. I don't watch TV unless the news is on.
2. We can sit near the front unless you don't want to sit at the back.
3. You will put on weight unless you eat fatty food.
4. Unless you will wear a thick coat, you will get very cold.
5. You can borrow my car unless you ask me first.

Exercise 3: Choose the correct word.

- 1 - ___ you are caught drinking and driving, you will lose your license.
If / Unless
- 2 - ___ you stop smoking, you'll be seriously ill.
If / Unless
- 3 - I won't be able to do it ___ you help me.
If / Unless
- 4 - ___ you're late, I'll leave without you.
If / Unless
- 5 - ___ he gets caught, he'll go to jail.
If / Unless
- 6 - I won't do it ___ you agree to help me; I'm not doing it alone.
If / Unless
- 7 - ___ she pays up, we're going to be in real trouble.
If / Unless
- 8 - She'll never agree to that ___ you accept her suggestions.
If / Unless
- 9 - ___ they're late again, I'll be furious.
If / Unless
- 10 - I don't want to go out ___ it's raining- I hate getting wet.
If / Unless



Unless your name
is "Google",
stop acting as if
you know everything !!

Google Search

I'm Feeling Lucky

ANSWERS:

Exercise 1: Match the beginnings of the sentences to the correct endings.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
g	b	a	f	c	h	d	e

1. You can't watch television in the UK... g. ...unless you have a licence.
2. Don't tell her what happened... b. ...unless she asks you.
3. You don't have to call me... a. ...unless you're going to be late.
4. We're going for a picnic tomorrow... f. ...unless it rains.
5. Children are not allowed into the cinema... c. ...unless they are with an adult.
6. You have to pay to enter the exhibition... h. ...unless you are over 65 years old.
7. Michael's quite shy. He doesn't talk to people... d. ...unless they talk to him first.
8. I'm not buying that computer... e. ...unless they give me a discount.

Exercise 2: Correct or wrong?

1. I don't watch TV unless the news is on.

Correct

2. We can sit near the front unless you don't want to sit at the back.

Wrong

3. You will put on weight unless you eat fatty food.

Wrong

4. Unless you will wear a thick coat, you will get very cold.

Wrong. The tense in the 'Unless' part of the sentence should be present: 'Unless you wear a thick coat...'

5. You can borrow my car unless you ask me first.

Wrong. It makes better sense to say: 'You can't borrow my car unless you ask me first'.

Exercise 3: Choose the correct word.

1 - ___ you are caught drinking and driving, you will lose your license.

If / Unless

2 - ___ you stop smoking, you'll be seriously ill.

If / **Unless**

3 - I won't be able to do it ___ you help me.

If / **Unless**

4 - ___ you're late, I'll leave without you.

If / Unless

5 - ___ he gets caught, he'll go to jail.

If / Unless

6 - I won't do it ___ you agree to help me; I'm not doing it alone.

If / **Unless**

7 - ___ she pays up, we're going to be in real trouble.

If / **Unless**

8 - She'll never agree to that ___ you accept her suggestions.

If / **Unless**

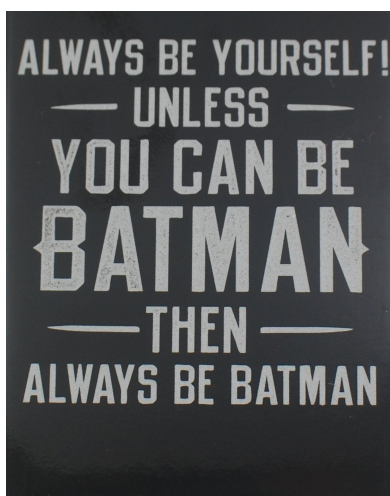
9 - ___ they're late again, I'll be furious.

If / Unless

10 - I don't want to go out ___ it's raining- I hate getting wet.

If / Unless

Adapted from bbclearningenglish.com



INTENSIFIERS: Too, enough, so, such.

TOO

Use: **Too** means there is a lot of something. It shows a **negative opinion**.

It's too hot = It is very hot and I don't like it.

Form: You can use **too** before an adjective.

It's too cold. My trousers are too small.

You can also use it before an adverb,

James speaks too quietly.

Before a noun, use **too much** (uncountable nouns) or **too many** (countable nouns).

I ate too much food. I ate too many sandwiches.

You can also use **too much** after a verb.

I ate too much. Paul drinks too much.

too + adjective/adverb	<i>This shirt is too expensive. It costs \$30 and I have only \$25. You walk too fast.</i>
too much + uncountable noun	<i>I drank too much water; now I really need to go to the bathroom!</i>
too many + countable noun	<i>She put too many eggs into the cake. The recipe said 3 and she used 5.</i>
verb + too much	<i>He complains too much. He has such a negative attitude.</i>

ENOUGH

Use: **Enough** means you have what you need.

We have enough food for everyone = everyone has some food.

We don't have enough chairs for everyone = some people don't have chairs.

Form: Write **enough** before a noun.

We have enough chairs.

But write it after an adjective, adverb or verb.

Are you warm enough? He's qualified enough. She isn't tall enough to be a model.

You don't work hard enough. Are you sleeping enough?

Sentences with **enough** are sometimes followed by **to + verb infinitive**.

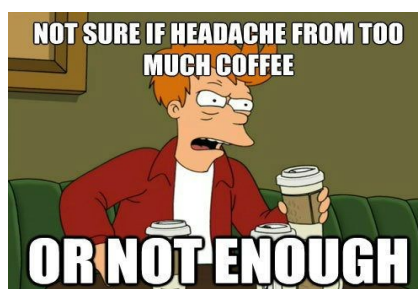
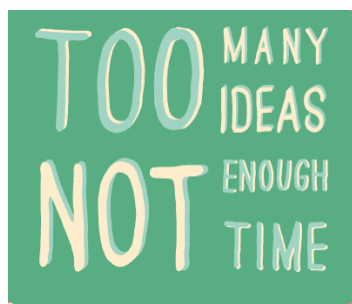
I'm not tall enough to reach the book.

I haven't got enough money to buy that coat.

enough + noun (countable or uncountable)	<i>We don't have enough people for a soccer team. We have 8 people and a team needs at least 11.</i>
adjective + enough	<i>Sorry kid, you're not old enough to buy alcohol. You're 19 and the minimum age is 21.</i>
verb + enough	<i>I don't exercise enough. I need to go to the gym more than once a month.</i>

TOO and ENOUGH: Revision exercise.

- I think I have drunk _____ for tonight. If I drank more, I wouldn't be able to drive later on.
- She's eighteen, so she's _____ (old) _____ to order a beer.
- You smoke _____. You should smoke less.
- We can't eat all this butter in a week! There's _____.
- These earrings are _____ (ugly)! I will never wear them!
- She can't be the main character in Beauty and the Beast: She's _____ (ugly)!
- We can't fight back. There are _____ of them. We must wait for the reinforcements. They're due to arrive soon.
- There's an outbreak of cholera, and we don't have _____ (means) _____ to stop it.
- They have cut off the power: I don't have _____ (light) _____ to finish reading this book.
- I've eaten _____ sandwiches. My stomach aches terribly.
- It's not surprising that you have failed your exams. You've been going out _____ (often).
- This lorry is not _____ (big) _____ to carry all this furniture. We need a bigger one.
- He's _____ (short) _____ to be a basketball player. He's only 1.60 metres tall.
- He's _____ (tall) _____ to be a policeman. He's 1.80 metres tall.
- She's _____ (jealous) _____ to go out with someone. She's always thinking that her partner is cheating on her.
- 'How many flowers do we need?' 'We have _____. Don't worry about it.'
- This field is _____ (large) _____ to cultivate crops. You don't need another field!
- 'Are there _____ (biscuits)?' 'Yes, there are. We won't be able to eat them all.'
- You're being _____ (nasty)! Can't you behave yourself once and for all?
- Don't go out! It's _____ (windy).



Sentence transformation with "too / enough"

You can write sentences with the same meaning using TOO and ENOUGH and the opposite adjectives.

*Examples: The tea is too hot. We can't drink it.
This tea is **too hot** to drink.*

*The boy is too short to climb the tree.
The boy isn't **tall enough** to climb the tree.*

Rewrite the sentences using the "too /enough" structures.

1. Jared was too lazy, he didn't pass the test.

Jared didn't work hard _____

2. Alice is only 16. She's too young to get married.

Alice isn't _____

3. You're not old enough to have grandchildren.

You're too _____.

4. The car is too slow to get to New York in three hours.

The car isn't _____

5. I'm not tall enough to reach the cupboard.

I'm too _____.

6. The red notebook is too big to fit in the gift box.

The red notebook isn't _____

7. The boys aren't strong, and my suit case is very heavy. They can't carry it.

The boys aren't strong _____.

Key

1. Jared didn't work hard enough to pass the exam.

2. Alice isn't old enough to get married.

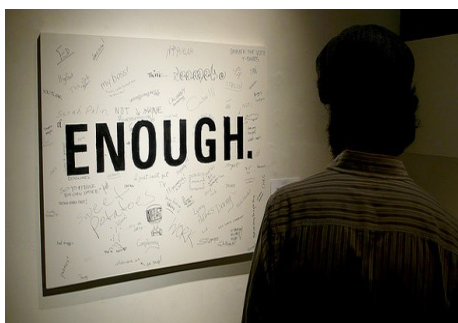
3. You're too young to have grandchildren.

4. The car isn't fast enough to get to New York in three hours.

5. I'm too short to reach the cupboard.

6. The red notebook isn't small enough to fit in the gift box.

7. The boys aren't strong enough to carry my suitcase.



SO or SUCH?

So

Use: **So** means very.

*It's **so** hot!*

Form: **So** is generally used before an adjective or an adverb.

*He's **so** funny! He plays the piano **so** well!*

So can be used with a **that** clause, to show a **result** of the first clause.

*I was **so** hot **that** I couldn't sleep.*

So much and **so many** are followed by a noun. **So much** can also appear after a verb.

The difference between **so much** and **so many** is the same as the difference between **much** and **many**. **So much** is used with singular uncountable nouns. **So many** is used with plural nouns.

*I have never drunk **so much** wine in my life.*

*She had **so many** problems that she didn't know what to do.*

*Come to this fascinating town and find out why **people like it so much**.*

Such

Use: **Such** also means very. **Such** is used before an **adjective and noun**.

*They are **such** nice children.*

Form: **A / an**, if necessary, go **after** **such**, not before.

~~That's a such pretty dress.~~ => That's **such** a pretty dress!

Like **So**, **Such** can be used with a **that** clause, to show a **result** of the first clause.

*It was **such** a nice day **that** we decided to go to the park.*

SO	SO MUCH	SO MANY	SUCH A/AN	SUCH
Before an adjective and adverb.	Followed by an uncountable noun. After a verb.	Followed by a countable noun in plural.	Before an adjective and a singular noun.	Before an adjective and a plural noun.
<i>It's so cold! She drove so quickly that...</i>	<i>I have never drunk so much wine in my life. He likes it so much that...</i>	<i>She had so many problems that she didn't know what to do.</i>	<i>It is such a beautiful car.</i>	<i>They are such nice people.</i>

Common mistakes

Some people use *too* with a positive meaning, you must use **so** or **very** instead:

**It's too hot! I love the summer!* => *It's so hot! I love the summer!*

2) Some students write *enough* in the wrong place.

**Do we have sugar enough? => Do we have enough sugar?*

SO and SUCH: Revision exercise.

- 1) The water was _____ clear that we decided to drink some.
- 2) He's got _____ a lot of pens that he can lend you as many as you wish.
- 3) The air in the country is _____ clean! You feel _____ good when you breathe deeply.
- 4) He hasn't been to his home town for _____ a long time he can hardly recognize it.
- 5) Our hotel is _____ far from here that we should take a taxi.
- 6) She's _____ a pretty girl that every boy in her class is mad about her.
- 7) She's _____ pretty that every boy in her class has fallen madly in love with her.
- 8) He brought _____ a long rope that they had to cut it in two.
- 9) There were _____ many people at that party that we decided to leave.
- 10) It's _____ a good day. We should go out for a walk.
- 11) She tells _____ many lies that no one believes a word she says.
- 12) They were _____ (helpful). They did everything for us.

ANSWERS:

TOO and ENOUGH

- I think I have drunk **enough** for tonight. If I drank more, I wouldn't be able to drive later on.
- She's eighteen, so she's **old enough** to order a beer.
- You smoke **too much**. You should smoke less.
- We can't eat all this butter in a week! There's **too much**.
- These earrings are **too ugly!** I will never wear them!
- She can't be the main character in Beauty and the Beast: She's **too** ugly!
- We can't fight back. There are **too many of** them. We must wait for the reinforcements. They're due to arrive soon.
- There's an outbreak of cholera, and we don't have **enough** means to stop it.
- They have cut off the power: I don't have **enough** light to finish reading this book.
- I've eaten **too many** sandwiches. My stomach aches terribly.
- It's not surprising that you have failed your exams. You've been going out **too** often.
- This lorry is not big **enough** to carry all this furniture. We need a bigger one.
- He's **too** short to be a basketball player. He's only 1.60 metres tall.
- He's tall **enough** to be a policeman. He's 1.80 metres tall.
- She's **too** jealous to go out with someone. She's always thinking that her partner is cheating on her.
- 'How many flowers do we need?' 'We have **enough**. Don't worry about it.'
- This field is large **enough** to cultivate crops. You don't need another field!
- 'Are there **enough** biscuits?' 'Yes, there are. We won't be able to eat them all.'
- You're being **too** nasty! Can't you behave yourself once and for all?
- Don't go out! It's **too** windy.

SO and SUCH

- The water was **so** clear that we decided to drink some.
- He's got **such** a lot of pens that he can lend you as many as you wish.
- The air in the country is **so** clean! You feel **so** good when you breathe deeply.
- He hasn't been to his home town for **such** a long time he can hardly recognize it.
- Our hotel is **so** far from here that we should take a taxi.
- She's **such** a pretty girl that every boy in her class is mad about her.
- She's **so** pretty that every boy in her class has fallen madly in love with her.
- He brought **such** a long rope that they had to cut it in two.
- There were **so** many people at that party that we decided to leave.
- It's **such** a good day. We should go out for a walk.
- She tells **so** many lies that no one believes a word she says.
- They were **so** (helpful). They did everything for us.

Rewrite each sentence in such a way that it means exactly the same as the sentence printed before it.

- a. She is such a good tennis player that she wins all her matches.
She plays tennis ...
- b. I'm too short to reach the shelf.
I'm not ...
- c. Algebra is too complicated for me to understand.
Algebra isn't ...
- d. The water is too cold for us to swim in.
The water is ...
- e. The package is too heavy for you to lift by yourself.
The package is so ...
- f. It was such a great book that I read it three times.
The book was ...
- g. It was such cold weather that there was ice on our car windscreen.
The weather was ...
- h. The weather was so cold that we cancelled the trip.
It was ...
- i. The book is so good that I can't put it down.
It is ...
- j. The speech was so long that some people left in the middle.
It was ...
- k. The view from the top was so magnificent that we couldn't move.
It was ...
- l. You are too young to be out so late at night.
You aren't ...
- m. This bag is too heavy for me to carry. Can you help me?
This bag is so ...
- n. You can't drive yet. You're not old enough.
You are too ...
- o. Janet isn't tall enough to be a basketball player.
Janet is ...
- p. This detective story is so good I can't put it down.
It's such ...
- q. The teacher spoke too fast for everyone to understand.
The teacher didn't speak ...
- r. The climb was so difficult that we stopped to rest several times.
It was ...
- s. Alan is too old to change careers now.
Alan isn't ...
- t. She ran too slowly to win the race.
She didn't ...
- u. My bag was so heavy that I had to ask for help.
It was ...
- v. The flat isn't big enough for us to live in.
The flat is so ...
- w. Jack wore such an elegant suit that everyone complimented him.
Jack's suit was ...
- x. My sister is too young to watch horror films.
My sister isn't ...
- y. Chinese is too difficult for me to learn.
Chinese is so ...
- z. My mother is so wise that people often ask her for advice.
My mother is such ...

Rewrite each sentence in such a way that it means exactly the same as the sentence printed before it.

- a. She is such a good tennis player that she wins all her matches.
She plays tennis ... **so well that she wins all her matches.**
- b. I'm too short to reach the shelf.
I'm not ... **tall enough to reach the shelf.**
- c. Algebra is too complicated for me to understand.
Algebra isn't ... **easy enough for me to understand.**
- d. The water is too cold for us to swim in.
The water is ... **so cold that I can't swim in.**
- e. The package is too heavy for you to lift by yourself.
The package is so ... **heavy that you can't lift it by yourself.**
- f. It was such a great book that I read it three times.
The book was ... **so great that I read it three times.**
- g. It was such cold weather that there was ice on our car windscreen.
The weather was ... **so cold that there was ice on our car windscreen.**
- h. The weather was so cold that we cancelled the trip.
It was ... **such cold weather that we cancelled the trip.**
- i. The book is so good that I can't put it down.
It is ... **such a good book that I can't put it down.**
- j. The speech was so long that some people left in the middle.
It was ... **such a long speech that some people left in the middle.**
- k. The view from the top was so magnificent that we couldn't move.
It was ... **such a magnificent top view that we couldn't move.**
- l. You are too young to be out so late at night.
You aren't ... **old enough to be out so late at night.**
- m. This bag is too heavy for me to carry. Can you help me?
This bag is so ... **heavy that I can't carry it.**
- n. You can't drive yet. You're not old enough.
You are too ... **too young to drive.**
- o. Janet isn't tall enough to be a basketball player.
Janet is ... **too short to be a basketball player.**
- p. This detective story is so good I can't put it down.
It's such ... **a good detective story that I can't put it down.**
- q. The teacher spoke too fast for everyone to understand.
The teacher didn't speak ... **slowly enough for everyone to understand.**
- r. The climb was so difficult that we stopped to rest several times.
It was ... **such a difficult climb that we stopped to rest several times.**
- s. Alan is too old to change careers now.
Alan isn't ... **young enough to change careers now.**
- t. She ran too slowly to win the race.
She didn't ... **run fast enough to win the race.**
- u. My bag was so heavy that I had to ask for help.
It was ... **such a heavy bag that I had to ask for help.**
- v. The flat isn't big enough for us to live in.
The flat is so ... **too small for us to live in.**
- w. Jack wore such an elegant suit that everyone complimented him.
Jack's suit was ... **so elegant that everyone complimented him**
- x. My sister is too young to watch horror films.
My sister isn't ... **old enough to watch horror films.**
- y. Chinese is too difficult for me to learn.
Chinese is so ... **difficult that I can't learn it.**
- z. My mother is so wise that people often ask her for advice.
My mother is such ... **a wise woman that people often ask her for advice.**

RELATIVE PRONOUNS AND CLAUSES

Relative Pronouns

relative pronoun	use	example
who	subject or object pronoun for people	I told you about the woman <i>who</i> lives next door.
which	subject or object pronoun for animals and things	Do you see the cat <i>which</i> is lying on the roof?
which	referring to a whole sentence	He couldn't read <i>which</i> surprised me.
whose	possession for people animals and things	Do you know the boy <i>whose</i> mother is a nurse?
whom	object pronoun for people, especially in non-defining relative clauses (in defining relative clauses we colloquially prefer <i>who</i>)	I was invited by the professor <i>whom</i> I met at the conference.
that	subject or object pronoun for people, animals and things in defining relative clauses (<i>who</i> or <i>which</i> are also possible)	I don't like the table <i>that</i> stands in the kitchen.

Relative clauses with who/which

who: when we talk about people

which: when we talk about things

whose: instead of his/her or their

We also use that for who/which.


This is the boy *who* played rugby.


This is the car *which* had an accident.


This is the boy *whose* mother works for the BBC.

RELATIVE CLAUSES

DEFINING RELATIVE CLAUSES

As the name suggests, these clauses give essential information to define or identify the person or thing we are talking about. Obviously, this is only necessary if there is more than one person or thing involved.

Example:

Elephants who marry mice are very unusual.

In this sentence we understand that there are many elephants, but it is clear that we are only talking the ones *who marry mice*.

Punctuation

Commas are not used in defining relative clauses.

Relative pronouns

The following relative pronouns are used in defining relative clauses:

	Person	Thing	Place	Time	Reason
Subject	who/that	which/that			
Object	who/whom/that/ø	which/that/ø	where	when	why
Possessive	whose	whose			

Notes:

1. The relative pronoun stands in place of a noun.

Examples:

- A clown is someone **who makes you laugh**.
- An elephant is an animal **that lives in hot countries**.
- The plums **that were in the fridge** were delicious. I have eaten them.
- Where are the plums **(that) I put in the fridge?**
- Has anyone seen **the book I was reading?**
- Nothing **that anyone does** can replace my lost bag.
- Let's go to a country **where the sun always shines**.
- They live in the house **whose roof is full of holes**.

NON-DEFINING RELATIVE CLAUSES

The information in these clauses is not essential. It tells us more about someone or something, but it does not help us to identify them or it.

Compare:

1. *Elephants **that love mice** are very unusual.* (This tells us which elephants we are talking about).
2. *Elephants, **which are large and grey**, can sometimes be found in zoos.* (This gives us some extra information about elephants - we are talking about all elephants, not just one type or group).
3. *John's mother, **who lives in Scotland**, has 6 grandchildren.* (We know who John's mother is, and he only has one. The important information is the number of grandchildren, but the fact that she lives in Scotland might be followed with the words "by the way" - it is additional information).

Punctuation

Non-defining relative clauses are always separated from the rest of the sentence by commas. The commas have a similar function to brackets:

My friend John has just written a best-selling novel. (He went to the same school as me) >
*My friend John, **who went to the same school as me**, has just written a best-selling novel.*

Relative pronouns in non-defining clauses

	Person	Thing	Place
Subject	who	which	
Object	who/whom	which	where
Possessive	whose		

Notes:

1. In **non-defining clauses**, you **cannot use 'that'** instead of *who*, *whom* or *which*.
2. You **cannot leave out the relative pronoun**, even when it is the object of the verb in the relative clause:
He gave me the letter, which was in a blue envelope.
He gave me the letter, which I read immediately

Examples:

- a. My grandmother, **who is dead now**, came from the North of England.
- b. I spoke to Fred, **who explained the problem**.
- c. The elephant looked at the tree, **under which she had often sat**.
- d. We stopped at the museum, **which we'd never been into**.
- e. She's studying maths, **which many people hate**.
- f. I've just met Susan, **whose husband works in London**.

Defining Relative Clauses Exercise 1

Make one sentence from the two short ones. The relative pronoun is the subject of the relative clause.

1. She worked for a man. The man used to be an athlete.

2. They called a lawyer. The lawyer lived nearby.

3. I sent an email to my brother. My brother lives in Australia.

4. The customer liked the waitress. The waitress was very friendly.

5. We broke the computer. The computer belonged to my father.

6. I dropped a glass. The glass was new.

7. She loves books. The books have happy endings.

8. They live in a city. The city is in the north of England.

9. The man is in the garden. The man is wearing a blue jumper.

10. The girl works in a bank. The girl is from India.

11. My sister has three children. My sister lives in Australia.

12. The waiter was rude. The waiter was wearing a blue shirt.

13. The money is in the kitchen. The money belongs to John.

14. The table got broken. The table was my grandmother's.

15. The television was stolen. The television was bought 20 years ago.

16. The fruit is on the table. The fruit isn't fresh.

Answers:

1. She worked for a man who / that used to be an athlete. 2. They called a lawyer who / that lived nearby. 3. I sent an email to my brother who / that lives in Australia. 4. The customer liked the waitress who / that was very friendly. 5. We broke the computer which / that belonged to my father. 6. I dropped a glass which / that was new. 7. She loves books which / that have happy endings. 8. They live in a city which / that is in the north of England. 9. The man who / that is wearing a blue jumper is in the garden. 10. The girl who / that is from India works in a bank. 11. My sister who / that lives in Australia has three children. 12. The waiter who / that was wearing a blue shirt was rude. 13. The money which / that belongs to John is in the kitchen. 14. The table which / that was my grandmother's got broken. 15. The television which / that was bought 20 years ago was stolen. 16. The fruit which / that isn't fresh is on the table.

Defining Relative Clauses Exercise 2

Make a new sentence by joining the two short sentences. The relative pronoun is the object of the relative clause.

1. We ate the fruit. I bought the fruit.

2. She bought the computer. Her brother had recommended the computer.

3. He lost the money. I had given him the money.

4. We called the taxi company. Julie often uses the taxi company.

5. John met a girl. I used to employ the girl.

6. Lucy called the doctor. My mother knows the doctor.

7. He brought a woman. I used to often meet the woman .

8. We employed the lawyer. Julie recommended the lawyer.

9. The fruit is on the table. I bought the fruit.

10. The wallet belongs to John. Lucy found the wallet in the garden.

11. The food was delicious. David cooked the food.

12. The car was stolen. My father gave me the car.

13. The man was arrested. I reported the man to the police.

14. The doctor was right. Lucy asked the doctor about her problem.

15. The waitress was very pretty. My brother dated the waitress.

16. The secretary is in the office. The boss likes the secretary.

Answers:

1. We ate the fruit (which / that) I bought. 2. She bought the computer(which / that) her brother had recommended. 3. He lost the money (which / that) I had given him. 4. We called the taxi company (which / that) Julie often uses. 5. John met a girl (who / that) I used to employ. 6. Lucy called the doctor (who / that) my mother knows. 7. He brought a woman (who / that) I used to often meet. 8. We employed the lawyer (who / that) Julie recommended. 9. The fruit (which / that) I bought is on the table. 10. The wallet (which / that) Lucy found in the garden belongs to John. 11. The food (which / that) David cooked was delicious. 12. The car (which / that) my father gave me was stolen. 13. The man (who / that) I reported to the police was arrested. 14. The doctor (who / that) Lucy asked about her problem was right. 15. The waitress (who / that) my brother dated was very pretty. 16. The secretary (who / that) the boss likes is in the office.

Defining Relative Clauses Exercise 3

Make a new sentence by joining the two short sentences. The relative pronoun can be the subject or the object of the relative clause.

1. They found the money. I dropped the money.

2. I broke the plate. The plate was a wedding present.

3. The police arrested the man. I saw the man steal a handbag.

4. The Queen fired the chef. We had met the chef.

5. She wrote to her friend. Her friend lives in Vietnam.

6. Jill ate the sandwich. The sandwich had tomato and cheese inside.

7. His friend lives in Scotland. His friend is a lawyer.

8. We called the secretary. I went to school with the secretary.

9. The CD is in my bag. The CD has Spanish music.

10. The book is very interesting. The book is about Japanese culture.

11. The bag was stolen. I bought the bag yesterday.

12. He likes films. The films come from Asia.

13. My nephew broke the plate. I received the plate as a present.

14. The chocolate was very old. We bought the chocolate last week.

15. The TV programme was very funny. Lucy recommended the TV programme.

16. The girl is on TV tonight. I met the girl yesterday.

Answers:

1. They found the money (which / that) I dropped. 2. I broke the plate which / that was a wedding present. 3. The police arrested the man (who / that) I saw steal a handbag. 4. The Queen fired the chef (who / that) we had met. 5. She wrote to her friend who / that lives in Vietnam. 6. Jill ate the sandwich which / that had tomato and cheese inside. 7. His friend who / that is a lawyer lives in Scotland. 8. We called the secretary (who / that) I went to school with. 9. The CD which / that has Spanish music is in my bag. 10. The book which / that is about Japanese culture is very interesting. 11. The bag (which / that) I bought yesterday was stolen. 12. He likes films which / that come from Asia. 13. My nephew broke the plate (which / that) I received as a present. 14. The chocolate (which / that) we bought last week was very old. 15. The TV programme (which / that) Lucy recommended was very funny. 16. The girl (who / that) I met the girl yesterday is on TV tonight.

Defining Relative Clauses Exercise 4

Make a new sentence by joining the two short sentences. The relative pronoun can be the subject or the object of the relative clause.

1. The man was late. Julie invited the man.

2. The doctor was sick. I wanted to see the doctor.

3. The accountant was arrested. The accountant works for my father's company.

4. I wrote to the friend. You met the friend last week.

5. The mobile phone can't be fixed. The mobile phone is broken.

6. John made a copy of the photo. I took the photo.

7. I met a girl. The girl was a doctor.

8. We called a doctor. The doctor works at a hospital in London.

9. We like the actor. The actor was in a famous film.

10. I went to the restaurant. I read about the restaurant in the newspaper.

11. She bought a car. Her sister liked the car.

12. I often buy cheese. The cheese is imported from Paris.

13. The hairdresser was very good. The hairdresser has red hair.

14. The child is playing in the garden. We see the child often.

15. The nurse is in the office. The nurse treated my grandmother.

16. The car is in the garage. The car broke down.

Answers:

1. The man (who / that) Julie invited was late. 2. The doctor (who / that) I wanted to see was sick. 3. The accountant who / that works for my father's company was arrested. 4. I wrote to the friend (who / that) you met last week. 5. The mobile phone which / that is broken can't be fixed. 6. John made a copy of the photo (which / that) I took. 7. I met a girl who / that was a doctor. 8. We called a doctor who / that works at a hospital in London. 9. We like the actor who / that was in a famous film. 10. I went to the restaurant (which / that) I read about in the newspaper. 11. She bought a car (which / that) her sister liked. 12. I often buy cheese which / that is imported from Paris. 13. The hairdresser who / that has red hair was very good. 14. The child (who / that) we see often is playing in the garden. 15. The nurse who / that treated my grandmother is in the office. 16. The car which / that broke down is in the garage.

Name: _____

Relative Clauses

1 Complete the following sentences with a correct relative pronoun.

- 1 I can't find the keys _____ Julie lent me yesterday.
- 2 The woman _____ talked to you is Peter's best friend.
- 3 Is November 1st the day _____ you celebrate your birthday?
- 4 They said that the house _____ they lived was very old.
- 5 I don't understand _____ you don't want to talk to Jenny.
- 6 I can't find anyone _____ can help me with this problem.
- 7 Why don't you ask someone _____ knows the answer?
- 8 The student _____ name is written on the blackboard will do the exercise.
- 9 Can you tell me the name of the shop _____ you bought that sweater?
- 10 I know a writer _____ novels are published in Chinese.

2 Join the following sentences. Omit the pronoun when possible.

- 1 I saw the shop. You had bought the camera there.

- 2 She is the woman. Her discovery made an important impact on society.

- 3 I met the footballer. He will play for our team next year.

- 4 They are the musicians. I have always wanted to see them in concert.

- 5 I didn't see the note. You put it on the fridge.

- 6 This is the team. They won the World Cup.

- 7 Do you know the house? Mary lives in it.

- 8 I will always remember the day. I met Jennifer that day.

- 9 I don't know the reason. He acted so rudely.

- 10 I found the book. You lost it at Christmas.



- KEY**
- Relative Clauses
- 1 that
 - 2 who(m)
 - 3 when
 - 4 where
 - 5 why
 - 6 who
 - 7 who
 - 8 whose
 - 9 where
 - 10 whose
- 1 I saw the shop where you had bought the camera.
 - 2 She is the woman whose discovery made an important impact on society.
 - 3 I met the footballer who will play for our team next year.
 - 4 They are the musicians I have always wanted to see in concert.
 - 5 I didn't see the note you put on the fridge.
 - 6 This is the team that won the World Cup.
 - 7 Do you know the house where Mary lives?
 - 8 I will always remember the day I met Jennifer.
 - 9 I don't know the reason he acted so rudely.
 - 10 I found the book you lost at Christmas.

EXPRESSIONS WITH THE VERB TO GET

TO GET + direct object = to obtain, to receive, to buy:

To obtain

She **got** her driving license last week.
They **got** permission to live in Switzerland.

To receive

I **got** a letter from my friend in Nigeria.
He **gets** \$1,000 a year from his father.

To buy

She **got** a black handbag from Gucci in Rome.
We **got** a new television for the sitting room.

TO GET + place expression = reach, arrive at a place:

We **got** to London at 6 p.m.
What time will we **get** there?
When did you **get** back from New York?

TO GET + adjective (often a comparative) = to become, show a change of state:

By the time they reached the house they were **getting** hungry.
I'm **getting** tired of all this nonsense.
My mother's **getting** old and needs looking after.
It **gets** dark very early in the winter.
Don't touch the stove until it **gets** cool.
It's **getting** hotter.

TO GET + past participle: GET MARRIED/DIVORCED, GET DRESSED/UNDRESSED, GET CHANGED, GET LOST...

They **got** married last year.
Every morning I have a shower and **get** dressed.
We **got** lost in Rome, we couldn't find our way.





TO GET + preposition / adverb is used in many phrasal verbs. Here are some of the most common ones:

Phrasal Verb	Meaning	Example
To get around	To be socially active	Tom really gets around, doesn't he?
To get away	To escape	The thief got away from the police.
To get back	To recover or retrieve	I got my books back from Tom.
To get by	To survive financially	Sally gets by on just \$1,000 a month.
To get in	To enter a car, train etc.	Come on, get in! Let's go.
To get into	To be accepted	He got into Oxford University.
To get off	To exit from a train, bus..	Jerry got off at 52nd Street.
To get on with	To have a good relationship with	I really get on well with Janet.
To get out	To leave	I got out of class at 3.30.
To get over	To recover from an illness	He got over his operation quickly.
To get up	To get out of bed	I got up at 7 this morning.

MY DAY

I usually get up at 6.15. I have a shower and I get dressed. I don't have breakfast, but I get a cup of coffee at the station. I normally get the 7.30 train, and I get to work at 8.45. I always check my emails first. I don't get a lot of emails, fortunately. By 10.30 I start to get hungry, so I usually get a cake or something from the cafeteria. At ten to five I get ready to leave work, but I get home quite late, at about 7 p.m. Then I usually get changed into my jeans. It's a long day. It's OK, but I don't like it in the winter, because it only gets light at about 8 a.m. and then it gets dark again before I leave work.

Quiz: Get

1. He's been quite ill recently, but he seems to be _____ now.
 - a) getting better
 - b) getting healthy
 - c) getting recovered
 - d) getting good

2. Which is the logical order of events?
 - a) get engaged - get divorced - get married
 - b) get engaged - get married - get divorced
 - c) get married - get engaged - get divorced
 - d) get divorced - get married - get engaged

3. Which of the following forms of transport do you NOT 'get on'?
 - a) a train
 - b) a plane
 - c) a taxi
 - d) a bicycle

4. You can imagine how he reacted when she told him she'd crashed the car, he _____ and then started shouting!
 - a) got really angry
 - b) got really sad
 - c) got really happy
 - d) got really bored

5. Do you know what time your train gets ____? Let me know and I'll meet you at the station.
 - a) on
 - b) in
 - c) at

6. Which of the following is American English? "Have you ever _____ lost on the New York subway – it's really confusing!"

a) get	c) got
b) getting	d) gotten

ANSWERS:

1. He's been quite ill recently, but he seems to be _____ now.

a) getting better

b) getting healthy

c) getting recovered

d) getting good

a) When someone recovers from an illness, they can get well, or get better.

b) If we talk about someone getting healthy, we mean that they are changing their lifestyle, maybe eating better and talking more exercise.

c) Someone can recover from an illness, but not 'get recovered'.

d) In this case, we need to use the adverb, well or the comparative form 'better'.

2. Which is the logical order of events?

a) get engaged - get divorced - get married

b) get engaged - get married - get divorced

c) get married - get engaged - get divorced

d) get divorced - get married - get engaged

3. Which of the following forms of transport do you NOT 'get on'?

a) a train

b) a plane

c) a taxi

d) a bicycle

We say 'get on' with all form of transport except a car or taxi.

4. You can imagine how he reacted when she told him she'd crashed the car, he _____ and then started shouting!

a) got really angry

b) got really sad

c) got really happy

d) got really bored

We use 'get + adjective' to describe a change in emotion.

5. Do you know what time your train gets _____? Let me know and I'll meet you at the station.

a) on

b) in

c) at

d) to

This verb + preposition means to arrive – 'We get in at 10:52'.

6. Which of the following is American English? "Have you ever _____ lost on the New York subway – it's really confusing!"

a) get

b) getting

c) got

d) gotten

The past participle of 'get' in American English is 'gotten' – e.g. I've never gotten married.



Exercise on the Phrasal Verbs of To Get 1 of 2

A Match the phrasal verbs with their meanings and then translate them.

Phrasal Verb	Meaning	Translation
1- To get off with	.... a – connect with by phone ⇨	.....
2- To get on	.... b – have good relations with⇨	.....
3- To get on with	.... c – board ⇨	.....
4- To get through	.... d – get out of bed ⇨	.....
5- To get up	.... e – have a romantic encounter with ⇨	.....

B Fill the gaps using phrasal verbs in the correct form.

- Anne got with Alan at the office party.
- When I got the bus, it was full and I had to stand up.
- My boss is OK. I get with her quite well.
- Is there something wrong with your mobile? I couldn't get
- Monday tomorrow and that means getting early.
- The police know that he got the train at Petersfield but they don't know where he was going.
- I've phoned the train station 5 times but I can't get to information.
- He's a pig. He got with my ex.
- He doesn't have to get until ten. Lucky thing!
- My brother and I used to fight but now we get fine.
- I tried phoning the builder four times but I couldn't get

C Now make up some examples of your own.

-
-
-
-





Answers

A 1-E 2-C 3-B 4-A 5-D

B

- 1 Anne got off with Alan at the office party.
- 2 When I got on the bus, it was full and I had to stand up.
- 3 My boss is OK. We get on quite well.
- 4 Is there something wrong with your mobile? I couldn't get through.
- 5 Monday tomorrow and that means getting up early.
- 6 The police know that he got on at Petersfield but they still don't know where he was going to.
- 7 We've phoned the station 5 times but we can't get through to information.
- 8 He's a pig. He got off with my ex.
- 9 She doesn't have to get up until ten.
- 10 My brother and I used to fight but now we get on just fine.
- 11 I tried phoning the builder four times but I couldn't get through.





Exercise on the Phrasal Verbs of To Get 2

A Match the phrasal verbs with their meanings and then translate them.

Phrasal Verb	Meaning	Translation
1- To get away with	.... a – escape punishment ⇨	.....
2- To get by (on)	.... b – start working ⇨	.....
3- To get down to	.... c – recover ⇨	.....
4- To get over	.... d – persuade ⇨	.....
5- To get round	.... e – survive on ⇨	.....

B Fill the gaps using phrasal verbs in the correct form.

- 1 A: Mary never does any revision but she always passes her exams.
B: I know. I don't know how she gets it.
- 2 I want Tuesday off work but I'm not sure how to get my boss.
- 3 I still haven't got this wretched cold yet.
- 4 A: How am I going to persuade Diane to let me come?
B: Don't worry. We'll get her somehow.
- 5 A: How much money did you spend in Thailand?
B: You can get on \$ 15 a day.
- 6 The robbers got a million Euros.
- 7 It took me a year to get my divorce.
- 8 A: When are your exams?
B: In 6 weeks time. I really need to get some work.
- 9 When I was a student, I got on very little money.
- 10 A: Geof had an operation last year.
B: Yes but he got it quickly.





Answers

A 1-A 2-E 3-B 4-C 5-D

B

- 1 A: Mary never does any revision but she always passes her exams.
B: I know. I don't know how she gets away with it.
- 2 I want Tuesday off work but I'm not sure how to get round my boss.
- 3 I still haven't got over this wretched cold yet.
- 4 A: How am I going to persuade Diane to let me come?
B: Don't worry. We'll get round her somehow.
- 5 A: How much money did you spend in Thailand? B: You can get by on \$ 15 a day.
- 6 The robbers got away with a million Euros.
- 7 It took me a year to get over my divorce.
- 8 A: When are your exams?
B: In 6 weeks time. I really need to get down to some work.
- 9 When I was a student, I got by on very little money.
- 10 A: Geof had an operation last year.
B: Yes but he got over it quickly.



THE PASSIVE

The Passive - Use

We normally use the passive when we are interested in the object or when we do not know who caused the action.

Example: Appointments are required in such cases.

We can only form a passive sentence from an active sentence when there is an object in the active sentence.

The Passive - Form

to be + past participle

The passive forms of a verb are created by combining a form of the "to be verb" with the past participle of the main verb.

How to form a passive sentence when an active sentence is given:

- object of the "active" sentence becomes subject in the "passive" sentence
- subject of the "active" sentence becomes "object" in the "passive" sentence" (or is left out)

Active:	Peter	builds	a house.
Passive:	A house	is built	by Peter.

Examples:

Active	Peter	builds	a house.	Simple Present
Passive:	A house	is built	by Peter.	

Active:	Peter	built	a house.	Simple Past
Passive:	A house	was built	by Peter.	

Active:	Peter	will build	a house.	Future
Passive:	A house	will be built	by Peter.	

Impersonal Passive - It is said ...

The phrase **It is said ...** is an impersonal passive construction. We often use it in news.

Passive sentence - version 1:

It is said that children are afraid of ghosts.

Passive sentence - version 2:

Children are said to be afraid of ghosts.

The correct active sentence would be:

Active sentence: People say that children are afraid of ghosts.

TRANSFORM THE FOLLOWING SENTENCES INTO THE PASSIVE

1. John broke the car.
2. We counted the money.
3. Someone killed the Prime Minister.
4. The children studied the lesson.
5. They will cut the paper
6. I found the keys.
7. We did the exercises.
8. They sell soap in that shop.
9. They speak Arabic in Morocco.
10. She will write a letter to her boyfriend tomorrow.
11. My parents saw a dog on the street.
12. Mary stole the bag.
13. We found the money.
14. My father read the magazine.
15. They will buy the book.
16. We use this room only on special occasions
17. I can hear a noise.
18. They will take the chairs away .
19. She should start the story now .
20. I read that book last year .
21. When will they tell us the truth ?
22. You can't use this noun in the plural .
23. The earthquake must have frightened you .
24. They will soon decorate the house .
25. What could one do in such cases ?
26. They should solve the problem as soon as possible
27. Someone opened the door
28. The mob broke all the windows in the riots
29. Someone will serve refreshments
30. People steal things from the supermarket
31. We never saw it in the house
32. Someone left this purse in the classroom
33. An ambulance will take the man to hospital
34. The watchman called the police
35. Someone turned on a light in the hall

THE PASSIVE VOICE

	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
Present Simple	He delivers the letters.	The letters are delivered.
Past Simple	He delivered the letters.	The letters were delivered.
Future Simple	He will deliver the letters.	The letters will be delivered.
Present Continuous	He is delivering the letters.	The letters are being delivered.
Past Continuous	He was delivering the letters.	The letters were being delivered.
Going to	He is going to deliver the letters.	The letters are going to be delivered.
Present Perfect	He has delivered the letters.	The letters have been delivered.
Past Perfect	He had delivered the letters.	The letters had been delivered.
Infinitive	He has to deliver the letters.	The letters have to be delivered.
Modals	He must deliver the letters.	The letters must be delivered.

Passive Verb Formation

Tense	Subject	Auxiliary		Past Participle
		Singular	Plural	
Present	The car/cars	is	are	designed.
Present perfect	The car/cars	has been	have been	designed.
Past	The car/cars	was	were	designed.
Past perfect	The car/cars	had been	had been	designed.
Future	The car/cars	will be	will be	designed.
Future perfect	The car/cars	will have been	will have been	designed.
Present progressive	The car/cars	is being	are being	designed.
Past progressive	The car/cars	was being	were being	designed.

PASSIVE SENTENCES

ANSWERS

1. John broke the car.
The car was broken by John.
2. We counted the money.
The money was counted by us.
3. Someone killed the Prime Minister.
The Prime Minister was killed.
4. The children studied the lesson.
The lesson was studied by the children.
5. They will cut the paper.
The paper will be cut (by them).
6. I found the keys.
The keys were found by me.
7. We did the exercises.
The exercises were done by us.
8. They sell soap in that shop.
Soap is sold in that shop.
9. They speak Arabic in Morocco.
Arabic is spoken in Morocco.
10. She will write a letter to her boyfriend tomorrow.
A letter will be written by her to her boyfriend tomorrow.
11. My parents saw a dog on the street.
A dog was seen on the street by my parents.
12. Mary stole the bag.
The bag was stolen by Mary.
13. We found the money.
The money was found by us.
14. My father read the magazine.
The magazine was read by my father.
15. They will buy the book.
The book will be bought by them.
16. We use this room only on special occasions.
This room is only used by us on special occasions.
17. I can hear a noise.
A noise can be heard by me.
18. They will take the chairs away .
The chairs will be taken away (by them).

19. She should start the story now .
The story should be started by her now.
20. I read that book last year .
That book was read by me last year.
21. When will they tell us the truth ?
When will the truth be told to us?
22. You can't use this noun in the plural .
This noun cannot be used in the plural.
23. The earthquake must have frightened you .
You must have been frightened by the earthquake.
24. They will soon decorate the house .
The house will soon be decorated (by them).
25. What could one do in such cases ?
What could be done in such cases?
26. They should solve the problem as soon as possible.
The problem should be solved by them as soon as possible.
27. Someone opened the door.
The door was opened.
28. The mob broke all the windows in the riots.
All the windows were broken by the mob in the riots.
29. Someone will serve refreshments.
Refreshments will be served.
30. People steal things from the supermarket.
Things are stolen from the supermarket.
31. We never saw it in the house.
It was never seen in the house (by us).
32. Someone left this purse in the classroom.
This purse was left (by someone) in the classroom.
33. An ambulance will take the man to hospital.
The man will be taken by an ambulance to hospital.
34. The watchman called the police.
The police was called by the watchman.
35. Someone turned on a light in the hall.
A light was turned on in the hall.



Passive Voice: special cases

● PASSIVE WITH **GET**

In informal conversation, *GET* is often used instead of *To Be*.

I got fired yesterday. (= I was fired yesterday)

If you get robbed, report to the police.

The balloon got filled with gas.

There was a fight, but nobody got hurt.

● PASSIVE WITH **HAVE**

have + object + past participle

The idea behind this construction is "I got someone to do something for me" (especially when you pay for the service).

I had my car cleaned. = I employed someone to clean my car.

I'll have my hair cut. = I'll pay a hair-dresser to cut my hair.

I've had my roof repaired. = I've hired someone to repair my roof.

I'm having my kids looked after. = A friend's taking care of them for me.

Compare:

- *I cut my hair yesterday.* → I did it myself, so I probably look horrible.

- *I had my hair cut yesterday.* → I went to the hairdresser's and they cut my hair.

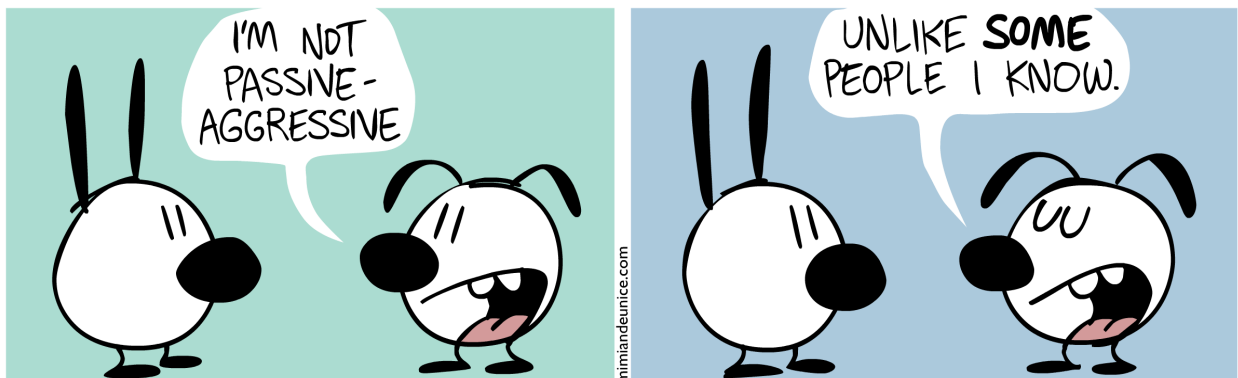
In this construction "*to have*" is a normal verb, so it needs **DO**.

Do you have your windows cleaned every month? - No, I don't have them cleaned so often.

Again, we can use *GET* instead of *HAVE* in colloquial speech:

He got his room painted.

I'm getting all my floors polished.



• VERBS WITH TWO OBJECTS

Some verbs have *two objects (direct and indirect)*.

- 1- Ron gave **some flowers** to Mary.
- 2- Ron gave **Mary** some flowers.

In English, both constructions can be turned into passive voice:

- 1- **Some flowers** were given to Mary.
- 2- **Mary** was given some flowers.

Option 2 is not possible in many languages, but it is in English.

They told me a secret. → A secret was told to me. = I was told a secret.

- *I gave him five dollars. (Active voice)*
- *Five dollars were given to him by me. (Passive Voice)*
- *He was given five dollars by me. (Passive Voice)*

- *She told me the truth. (Active voice)*
- *I was told the truth by her. (Passive Voice)*
- *The truth was told to me by her. (Passive Voice)*

- *The Government has sent him a message. (Active voice)*
- *He was sent a message by the government. (Passive Voice)*
- *A message was sent to him by the government. (Passive Voice)*

• A SENTENCE AS THE SUBJECT

When the object of the active voice is a whole sentence (connected with *that*), we have again two possibilities:

They say (that) he is ill. → *It is said (that) he is ill.*

 → ***He is said to be ill.***

Passive voice: verbs with two objects

Many verbs can be followed by two objects: an indirect object and a direct object. Examples of such verbs are: give, send, ask, offer, promise, sell, tell, show, lend... When a verb has two objects, two structures are possible.

Some verbs have two objects: a direct object (D.O.) and an indirect object (I.O.).

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION															
<p>Active: They gave ^{I.O.} Spielberg ^{D.O.} an award.</p> <p>Passive 1: Spielberg was given an award.</p> <p>Passive 2: An award was given to Spielberg.</p>	<p>When an active sentence has two objects, the passive sentence can begin with either object. Notice that if the direct object (<i>an award</i>) becomes the subject of the passive sentence, <i>to</i> is used before the indirect object.</p>															
<p>Language Note: Some verbs that use two objects are:</p> <table> <tr> <td>bring</td> <td>lend</td> <td>pay</td> <td>serve</td> <td>teach</td> </tr> <tr> <td>give</td> <td>offer</td> <td>sell</td> <td>show</td> <td>tell</td> </tr> <tr> <td>hand</td> <td>owe</td> <td>send</td> <td>take</td> <td>write</td> </tr> </table>		bring	lend	pay	serve	teach	give	offer	sell	show	tell	hand	owe	send	take	write
bring	lend	pay	serve	teach												
give	offer	sell	show	tell												
hand	owe	send	take	write												

(Subject + verb + direct object + preposition + indirect object)	(Subject + verb + indirect object + direct object)
<i>She told a story to me.</i>	<i>She told me a story.</i>
<i>He gave a car to his sister.</i>	<i>He gave his sister a car.</i>

Both of these structures can be made passive.

PASSIVE 1	PASSIVE 2
The direct object as the subject of the passive verb	The indirect object as the subject of the passive verb
<i>A story was told to me (by her)</i>	<i>I was told a story (by her).</i>
<i>A car was given to his sister (by him).</i>	<i>His sister was given a car (by him).</i>

Of these, the **second structure (indirect object as subject of the passive verb)** is probably the **more common** of the two.

- **They** were lent two thousand pounds last year. (More common)
- **Two thousand pounds** were lent to them last year. (Less common)



The Passive: Verbs with Two Objects Exercise 1

This time there are two answers:

1. John gave a bar of chocolate to Jill.

a: _____

b: _____

2. I lent a pencil to Graham.

a: _____

b: _____

3. Fiona told the truth to Julian.

a: _____

b: _____

4. They offered the job to Simon.

a: _____

b: _____

5. The boss showed the new computer to Anna.

a: _____

b: _____

6. Julie taught the grammar to the students.

a: _____

b: _____

7. I sent the email to John.

a: _____

b: _____

8. Lucy threw the ball to the child.

a: _____

b: _____

9. Sophia sold the car to a doctor.

a: _____

b: _____

10. I asked the question to David.

a: _____

b: _____

Answers:

1. a: Jill was given a bar of chocolate (by John).
b: A bar of chocolate was given to Jill (by John).
2. a: Graham was lent a pencil (by me).
b: A pencil was lent to Graham (by me).
3. a: Julian was told the truth (by Fiona).
b: The truth was told to Julian (by Fiona).
4. a: Simon was offered the job (by them).
b: The job was offered to Simon (by them).
5. a: Anna was shown the new computer (by the boss).
b: The new computer was shown to Anna (by the boss).
6. a: The students were taught the grammar (by Julie).
b: The grammar was taught to the students (by Julie).
7. a: John was sent the email (by me).
b: The email was sent to John (by me).
8. a: The child was thrown the ball (by Lucy).
b: The ball was thrown to the child (by Lucy).
9. a: A doctor was sold the car (by Sophia).
b: The car was sold to a doctor (by Sophia).
10. a: David was asked the question (by me).
b: The question was asked to David (by me).

The Passive: Present Simple

Make the sentences passive:

Somebody cleans the office every day.

The office is cleaned every day

1. John sends emails.

2. The gardener cuts the grass.

3. Somebody prefers chocolate.

4. Someone often steals cars.

5. My neighbour plays loud music.

6. They speak English here.

7. Somebody loves the London parks.

8. Lisa writes articles.

9. Peter loves Julie.

10. My mother reads a lot of books.

11. Alfred cooks dinner everyday.

12. The milkman delivers milk in the mornings.

13. They buy flowers for the flat.

14. Somebody washes the cars every week.

ANSWERS:

1. Emails are sent by John.
2. The grass is cut by the gardener.
3. Chocolate is preferred.
4. Cars are often stolen.
5. Loud music is played by my neighbour.
6. English is spoken here.
7. The London parks are loved.
8. Articles are written by Lisa.
9. Julie is loved by Peter.
10. A lot of books are read by my mother.
11. Dinner is cooked everyday by Alfred.
12. Milk is delivered by the milkman in the mornings.
13. Flowers are bought for the flat.
14. The cars are washed every week.

The Passive: Past Simple

Make the sentences passive (past simple):

*Somebody lost the letter.
The letter was lost*

1. Peter found the key.

2. Someone made mistakes.

3. Chris loved that woman.

4. They cleaned the rooms.

5. Somebody fixed the computer.

6. Somebody built that house.

7. Tolstoy wrote 'War and Peace'.

8. Leonardo da Vinci painted The Mona Lisa.

9. Somebody stole my wallet.

10. James prepared lunch.

11. They drank a lot of coffee.

12. They forgot the papers.

13. Jess closed the windows.

14. Somebody invited Julie and Luke to a party.

ANSWERS:

1. The key was found by Peter.
2. Mistakes were made.
3. That woman was loved by Chris.
4. The rooms were cleaned.
5. The computer was fixed.
6. That house was built.
7. "War and Peace" was written by Tolstoy.
8. The Mona Lisa was painted by Leonardo da Vinci.
9. My wallet was stolen.
10. Lunch was prepared by James.
11. A lot of coffee was drunk.
12. The papers were forgotten.
13. The windows were closed by Jess.
14. Julie and Luke were invited to a party.

The Passive: Present Perfect

Make the sentences passive:

*Somebody has cleaned the kitchen.
The kitchen has been cleaned*

1. My boyfriend has watered the plants.

2. _____

3. Mt friends have bought the presents.

4. _____

5. Somebody has killed the President.

6. _____

7. Somebody has elected that man.

8. _____

9. Somebody has fired John.

10. _____

11. The chef has prepared the meal.

12. _____

13. The children have eaten the strawberries.

14. _____

ANSWERS:

1. The plants have been watered by my boyfriend.

2. The money has been taken.

3. The presents have been bought by my friends.

4. The report has been finished by Helen.

5. The President has been killed.

6. The road has been repaired by the Council.

7. That man has been elected.

8. Some Italian words have been learned by Mary.

9. John has been fired.

10. New books have been ordered by the librarian.

11. The meal has been prepared by the chef.

12. The email has been sent by my boss.

13. The strawberries have been eaten by the children.

14. The heating has been fixed by the janitor.

The Passive: Future Simple

Make the sentences passive:

*Somebody will clean the windows.
The windows will be cleaned.*

1. The bank manager will process your application.

2. Somebody will find your glasses.

3. Fred will bring food.

4. Rachel will help you.

5. Somebody will steal that bicycle.

6. The waiter will take your order.

7. Almudena Grandes will write a new book.

8. The Council will build a stadium.

9. Joseph will collect your luggage.

10. My boss will explain the plan.

11. Somebody will wash the floor later.

12. The postwoman will deliver a parcel .

13. The kids will drink all the juice.

14. Roger will prepare everything.

ANSWERS:

1. Your application will be processed by the bank manager.
2. Your glasses will be found.
3. Food will be brought by Fred.
4. You will be helped by Rachel.
5. That bicycle will be stolen.
6. Your order will be taken by the waiter.
7. A new book will be written by Almudena Grandes.
8. A stadium will be built by the Council.
9. Your luggage will be collected by Joseph.
10. The plan will be explained by my boss.
11. The floor will be washed later.
12. A parcel will be delivered by the postwoman .
13. All the juice will be drunk by the kids.
14. Everything will be prepared by Roger.

The Passive: Mixed Tenses

Change these sentences from active to passive:

1. People speak Portuguese in Brazil.

2. The Government is planning a new road near my house.

3. My grandfather built this house in 1943.

4. Picasso was painting Guernica at that time.

5. The cleaner has cleaned the office.

6. He had written three books before 1867.

7. John will tell you later.

8. By this time tomorrow we will have signed the deal.

9. Somebody should do the work.

10. The traffic might have delayed Jimmy.

11. Everybody loves Mr Brown.

12. They are building a new stadium near the station.

13. The wolf ate the princess.

14. At six o'clock someone was telling a story.

15. Somebody has drunk all the milk!

16. I had cleaned all the windows before the storm.

17. A workman will repair the computer tomorrow.

18. By next year the students will have studied the passive.

19. James might cook dinner.

20. Somebody must have taken my wallet.

ANSWERS:

1. Portuguese is spoken in Brazil. 2. A new road is being planned near my house. 3. This house was built (by my grandfather) in 1943. 4. Guernica was being painted (by Picasso) at that time. 5. The office has been cleaned. 6. Three books had been written before 1867. 7. You will be told (by John) later. 8. By this time tomorrow the deal will have been signed. 9. The work should be done. 10. Jimmy might have been delayed (by the traffic). 11. Mr Brown is loved (by everybody). 12. A new stadium is being built near the station. 13. The princess was eaten (by the wolf). 14. At six o'clock a story was being told. 15. All the milk has been drunk! 16. All the windows had been cleaned (by me) before the storm. 17. The computer will be repaired tomorrow. 18. By next year the passive will have been studied (by the students). 19. Dinner might be cooked (by James). 20. My wallet must have been taken.

The Passive: Verbs with Two Objects

This time there are two answers:

1. John gave a bar of chocolate to Jill.
a: _____
b: _____
2. I lent a pencil to Graham.
a: _____
b: _____
3. Fiona told the truth to Julian.
a: _____
b: _____
4. They offered the job to Simon.
a: _____
b: _____
5. The boss showed the new computer to Anna.
a: _____
b: _____
6. Julie taught the grammar to the students.
a: _____
b: _____
7. I sent the email to John.
a: _____
b: _____
8. Lucy threw the ball to the child.
a: _____
b: _____
9. Sophia sold the car to a doctor.
a: _____
b: _____
10. I asked the question to David.
a: _____
b: _____

ANSWERS:

1. Jill was given a bar of chocolate (by John). A bar of chocolate was given to Jill.
2. Graham was lent a pencil (by me). A pencil was lent to Graham (by me).
3. Julian was told the truth (by Fiona). The truth was told to Julian (by Fiona).
4. Simon was offered the job (by them). The job was offered to Simon (by them).
5. Anna was shown the new computer (by the boss). The new computer was shown to Anna.
6. The students were taught the grammar (by Julie). The grammar was taught to the students.
7. John was sent the email (by me). The email was sent to John (by me).
8. The child was thrown the ball (by Lucy). The ball was thrown to the child (by Lucy).
9. A doctor was sold the car (by Sophia). The car was sold to a doctor (by Sophia).
10. David was asked the question (by me). The question was asked to David (by me).

Name: _____



Passive Voice

1 Fill in the gaps with the correct tense of the verbs in brackets.

On the Victoria Embankment next to the River Thames, there is a large Egyptian obelisk called Cleopatra's Needle. Although it _____ (1 call) Cleopatra's Needle, it (2 make) _____ for King Thothmes III in about 1480BC. Cleopatra (3 not / be born) _____ until about 69 B.C.

In 1877, a special container (4 make) _____ for the 160-tonne obelisk and it (5 transport) _____ from Egypt to London. On the way to England the container (6 lose) _____ at sea for a time until it (7 find) _____ by a British ship. The obelisk (8 take) _____ finally _____ to London in 1878.

A time capsule—a special box for future generations to find—(9 place) _____ under the obelisk. Many articles of the time (10 keep) _____ there, including some coins, newspapers and pictures.

2 Present or past passive?

The London underground map is very famous and it _____ (1 consider) to be a triumph of graphic design. One of the most complicated underground systems in the world (2 represent) _____ on the map in a simple and attractive way. The map (3 make) _____ by Henry Beck in 1931.

3 Present, past perfect or future passive?

Last year I went to visit the Tower of London. I _____ (1 take) to the White Tower by a man wearing 15th century clothes (called a "yeoman", "warder" or "beefeater"). Then I (2 show) _____ where the prisoners (3 keep) _____. A room full of swords and other weapons (4 could / see) _____. Next I (5 guide) _____ to the Green Tower and (6 show) _____ the place where the prisoners' heads (7 cut off) _____. Then I (8 lead) _____ to the Bloody Tower, where the two sons of King Edward (9 probably / murder) _____. The warder pointed to some fat black birds on the grass and talked about them. He said that the birds (10 call) _____ "ravens". It (11 say) _____ that if the ravens ever leave the Tower, England (12 conquer) _____. The ravens' wings (13 cut) _____, so they cannot escape. They (14 look) _____ after by a keeper.

- 14 are looked
 - 13 have been cut
 - 12 will be conquered
 - 11 is said
 - 10 are called
 - 9 were probably murdered
 - 8 was led
 - 7 were cut off
 - 6 was shown
 - 5 was guided
 - 4 could be seen
 - 3 were kept
 - 2 was shown
 - 1 was taken
- 3**
- 3 was made
 - 2 is represented
 - 1 is considered
- 2**
- 10 were kept
 - 9 was placed
 - 8 was taken
 - 7 was found
 - 6 was lost
 - 5 was transported
 - 4 was made
 - 3 was not born
 - 2 was made
 - 1 is called
- 1**

Passive Voice

KEY

Active and Passive Voice Exercises

Transform the following sentences into the Passive:

1. Ms Sullivan **teaches** us grammar.
2. The teacher **praised** him.
3. The firemen **took** the injured to the hospital.
4. An earthquake **destroyed** the town.
5. The boy's work **pleased** the teacher.
6. The fire **damaged** the building.
7. The manager **will give** you a ticket.
8. Everyone **will blame** us.
9. The wind **blew down** the trees.
10. The police **caught** the thieves.
11. Alice **posted** the letter.
12. The hostess **received** us.
13. They **killed** the snake with a stick.
14. The people **welcomed** the minister.
15. They **found** him guilty of murder.
16. John Mathews **built** this house in 1991.

Complete the following sentences using the appropriate active or passive verb forms. Choose your answers from the given options.

1. The problem to the children. (explained / was explained)
2. Those pyramids around 400 AD. (built / were built)
3. All the trouble by your mother. (has caused / was caused)
4. The visitors (were shown / have shown) a collection of old manuscripts.
5. I him ten thousand pounds last year. (lend / lent / was lent)
6. She of spiders. (frightened / is frightened)
7. That picture by my grandmother. (painted / was painted)
8. I by his attitude. (shocked / have shocked / was shocked)
9. Excuse the mess. The house (is painting / is being painted / has painted)
10. I knew why I (had chosen / had been chosen)



Answers

1. We are taught grammar by Ms Sullivan.
2. He was praised by the teacher.
3. The injured were taken to the hospital by the firemen.
4. The town was destroyed by an earthquake.
5. The teacher was pleased with the boy's work.
6. The building was damaged by the fire.
7. You will be given a ticket by the manager.
8. We will be blamed by everyone.
9. The trees were blown down by the wind.
10. The thieves were caught by the police.
11. The letter was posted by Alice.
12. We were received by the hostess.
13. The snake was killed with a stick.
14. The minister was welcomed by the people.
15. He was found guilty of murder.
16. This house was built by John Mathews in 1991.

Answers

1. The problem **was explained** to the children.
2. Those pyramids **were built** around 400 AD.
3. All the trouble **was caused** by your mother.
4. The visitors **were shown** a collection of old manuscripts.
5. I **lent** him ten thousand pounds last year.
6. She **is frightened** of spiders.
7. That picture **was painted** by my grandmother.
8. I **was shocked** by his attitude.
9. Excuse the mess. The house **is being painted**.
10. I knew why I **had been chosen**.



THE PASSIVE: EXERCISES

1. Complete the sentences with the correct passive form of the verbs in brackets. Use the Present Simple.

- English _____ (speak) in many countries.
- The post _____ (deliver) at about 7 o'clock every morning.
- _____ (the building/use) any more?
- How often _____ (the Olympic Games/hold)?
- How _____ (your name/spell)?
- My salary _____ (pay) every month.
- These cars _____ (not make) in Japan.
- The name of the people who committed the crime _____ (not know).
- His travel expenses _____ (not pay) by his company.

2. Complete the sentences with the correct passive form of the verbs in brackets. Use the Past Simple.

- My car _____ (repair) last week.
- This song _____ (not write) by John Lennon.
- _____ (the phone/answer) by a young girl?
- The film _____ (make) ten years ago.
- When _____ (tennis/invent)?
- The car _____ (not damage) in the accident.
- The original building _____ (pull) down in 1965.
- Where _____ (this pot/make)?
- When _____ (this bridge/build)?

3. Choose the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

FIAT

Fiat 0 *was started* (*started/was started*) by a group of Italian businessmen in 1899. In 1903, Fiat, 1 _____ (*produced/was produced*) 132 cars. Some of these cars 2 _____ (*exported/were exported*) by the company to the United States and Britain. In 1920, Fiat 3 _____ (*started/was started*) making cars at a new factory at Lingotto, near Turin. There was a track on the roof where the cars 4 _____ (*tested/were tested*) by technicians. In 1936, Fiat launched the Fiat 500. This car 5 _____ (*called/was called*) the Topolino – the Italian name for Mickey Mouse. The company grew, and in 1963 Fiat 6 _____ (*exported/was exported*) more than 300,000 vehicles. Today, Fiat is based in Turin, and its cars 7 _____ (*sold/are sold*) all over the world.



ANSWERS

1. Complete the sentences with the correct passive form of the verbs in brackets. Use the Present Simple.

- English **is spoken** in many countries.
- The post **is delivered** at about 7 o'clock every morning.
- Is** the building **used** any more?
- How often **are** the Olympic Games **held**?
- How **is** your name **spelt**?
- My salary **is paid** every month.
- These cars **are not made** in Japan.
- The name of the people who committed the crime **is not known**.
- His travel expenses **are not paid** by his company.

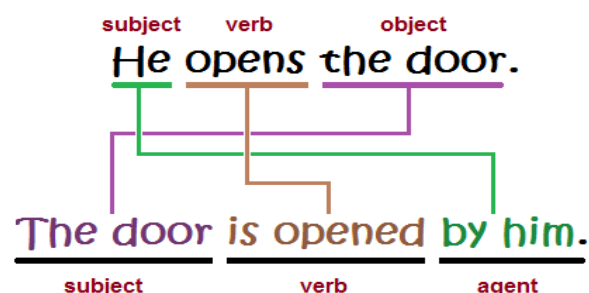
2. Complete the sentences with the correct passive form of the verbs in brackets. Use the Past Simple.

- My car **was repaired** last week.
- This song **was not written** by John Lennon.
- Was** the phone **answered** by a young girl?
- The film **was made** ten years ago.
- When **was** tennis **invented**?
- The car **was not damaged** in the accident.
- The original building **was pulled down** in 1965.
- Where **was** this pot **made**?
- When **was** this bridge **built**?

3. Choose the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

FIAT

Fiat **was started** by a group of Italian businessmen in 1899. In 1903, Fiat, **produced** 132 cars. Some of these cars **were exported** by the company to the United States and Britain. In 1920, Fiat **started** making cars at a new factory at Lingotto, near Turin. There was a track on the roof where the cars **were tested** by technicians. In 1936, Fiat launched the Fiat 500. This car **was called** the Topolino – the Italian name for Mickey Mouse. The company grew, and in 1963 Fiat **exported** more than 300,000 vehicles. Today, Fiat is based in Turin, and its cars **are sold** all over the world.



Passive voice structures with infinitives

Read the following sentence.

People say that he is a criminal.

Can we change this sentence into the passive? Yes, we can.

It is said that he is a criminal. (Passive)

He is said to be a criminal. (Passive)

They say that these nuts are good for your health. (Active)

It is said that these nuts are good for your health. (Passive)

These nuts are said to be good for your health. (Passive)

Exercise

Change the following sentences into the passive:

1. They say that he is a strict disciplinarian.
2. People believe that he is in favour of the change.
3. People say that this plant is a remedy for cancer.
4. They say that his company is in trouble.
5. They say that these kinds of dogs are very aggressive.



Answers

1. He is said to be a strict disciplinarian.
2. He is believed to be in favour of the change.
3. This plant is said to be a remedy for cancer.
4. His company is said to be in trouble.
5. These kinds of dogs are said to be very aggressive.

HAVE/GET SOMETHING DONE

En castellano cuando nos cortamos el pelo decimos: "Me he cortado el pelo" o "Me corté el pelo". La expresión es ambigua porque parece que tú mismo has hecho la acción de cortarte el pelo, cuando lo cierto es que es un peluquero o peluquera el que lo hizo. Pero en inglés no es así, hay que especificar si eres tú el que hace la acción o si es otra persona quien la realiza.

Usamos **"To have/get something done"** cuando queremos decir que alguien hace algo por alguien, alguien encarga hacer algo, o se le hace algo a alguien.

**Se forma con
have/get + noun + past participle**



FORM

Tense	have/get something done
Present Simple	I <u>have/get</u> my hair <u>cut</u> .
Past Simple	I <u>had/got</u> my hair <u>cut</u> .
Present Continuous	I'm <u>having/getting</u> my hair <u>cut</u> .
Past Continuous	I <u>was having/getting</u> my hair <u>cut</u> .
Present Perfect	I <u>have had</u> my hair <u>cut</u> .
Past Perfect	I <u>had had</u> my hair <u>cut</u> .
will	I <u>will have</u> my hair <u>cut</u> .
must	I <u>must have</u> my hair <u>cut</u> .
be going to	I'm <u>going to have</u> my hair <u>cut</u> .

- They repaired their car. (They did it themselves).
They had their car repaired. (They paid someone to repair it).
- I cut my hair yesterday. (I cut it myself).
I had my hair cut yesterday. (I went to the hairdresser's).

CAUSATIVE

VERBS

Have
SOMETHING
DONE

EXAMPLES AND SPANISH TRANSLATION:

- Liz and Meg are having their hair dyed.
Liz y Meg se están haciendo teñir el pelo.
- Mr. Singer always has his suits made at the tailor's shop.
El señor Singer siempre se manda hacer los trajes en la sastrería.
- Jake had his groceries delivered two hours ago.
Le trajeron las compras a Jake hace dos horas.
- Diane has had her printer cartridges refilled.
Diane ha hecho recargar los cartuchos de su impresora.
- We'd just had our house fumigated.
Habíamos acabado de hacer fumigar la casa.
- You should have your eyes checked.
Deberías hacerte revisar la vista.
- Jenny will have her ears pierced.
Jenny se hará perforar las orejas.

También se puede usar el verbo **get** en lugar del verbo **have** en contextos más informales:

- I usually get my hair done at Luigi's.
Generalmente me peino en Luigi's.
- Martin got his tonsils removed yesterday.
A Martin le extirparon las amígdalas ayer.
- You must get this pipe fixed as soon as possible.
Debes hacer arreglar esta cañería lo antes posible.

I had my car fixed



Causatives Exercise 1: Have / Get Something Done

Change these examples into the structure 'have + object + past participle' or 'get + object + past participle'. For example: I cleaned my kitchen (have) → I had my kitchen cleaned.

1. I washed my car. (have)

2. I cut my hair. (get)

3. I typed the documents. (have)

4. I fixed my washing machine. (get)

5. I cut my grass. (have)

6. I painted my bedroom. (get)

7. I repaired my fridge. (have)

8. I tidied my garden. (get)

9. I edited the article. (have)

10. I cleaned the carpets. (get)

Causatives Exercise 1 Page 2

11. I printed the photo. (have)

12. I checked my teeth. (get)

13. I cleaned the windows. (have)

14. I made the necklace. (get)

15. I delivered the furniture. (have)

16. I repaired the roof. (get)

17. I wrote the report. (have)

18. I dyed my hair. (get)

19. I sent the money. (have)

20. I built the shed. (get)

Answers to Causatives Exercise 1

1. I had my car washed.
2. I got my hair cut.
3. I had the documents typed.
4. I had my washing machine fixed.
5. I had my grass cut.
6. I got my bedroom painted.
7. I had my fridge repaired.
8. I got my garden tidied.
9. I had the article edited.
10. I got the carpets cleaned.
11. I had the photo printed.
12. I got my teeth checked.
13. I had the windows cleaned.
14. I got the necklace made.
15. I had the furniture delivered.
16. I got the roof repaired.
17. I had the report written.
18. I got my hair dyed.
19. I had the money sent.
20. I got the shed built.

Have Something Done Exercise

I repaired my computer - *I did it myself*

I had my computer repaired - *someone else did it*

A Fill the gaps with **have** and the verb in brackets in their correct forms.

- 1 We the roof last year. It cost us a packet. (repair)
- 2 Anne her hair every Friday afternoon. (do)
- 3 I the brakes three times a year. (check)
- 4 The government the whole town yesterday. (evacuate)
- 5 I my hard drive for a bigger one last week. (change)
- 6 When did you last the airconditioning? (service)
- 7 You don't think Liv Tyler's beautiful?! You should your eyes (test)
- 8 After the plague of fleas, the boss the office (disinfect)
- 9 Your cat's coughing. You need to him for parasites. (treat)
- 10 Daphne her legs once a fortnight. (do)
- 11 I normally my suit dry before a wedding. (clean)
- 12 The headmaster all the lockers for the missing footballs yesterday. (search)
- 13 Have you your house? (double-glaze)
- 14 Have you that poster I bought you yet? (frame)
- 15 The house is in chaos. We're a new kitchen in. (put)

B Now write some examples of your own.

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4





Answers

- 1 We had the roof repaired last year. It cost us a packet. (repair)
- 2 Anne has her hair done every Friday afternoon. (do)
- 3 I have the brakes checked three times a year. (check)
- 4 The government had the whole town evacuated. (evacuate)
- 5 I had my hard drive changed for a bigger one. (change)
- 6 When did you last have the airconditioning serviced? (service)
- 7 You don't think Liv Tyler's beautiful?! You should have your eyes tested. (test)
- 8 After the plague of fleas, the boss had the office disinfected. (disinfect)
- 9 Your cat's coughing. You need to have him treated for parasites. (treat)
- 10 Daphne has her legs done once a fortnight. (do)
- 11 I normally have my suit dry cleaned before a wedding. (clean)
- 12 The headmaster had all the lockers searched for the missing footballs.
(search)
- 13 Have you had your house double-glazed? (double-glaze)
- 14 Have you had that poster I bought you framed yet? (frame)
- 15 The house is in chaos. We're having a new kitchen put in at the moment. (put)



CAUSATIVE VERBS: HAVE/GET SOMETHING DONE

Have something done and *Get something done* are both used to refer to actions which are done for the subject rather than by the subject. Causative verbs are used instead of passive verbs to show that the subject causes the action to be done.

1. *Have something done*

*I don't know how to repair cars, so I'm **having mine repaired** at the garage round the corner.*

2. *Get something done*

*I really must **get my eyes tested**. I'm sure I need glasses.
Get your hair cut!*

NOTE: The differences between *have* and *get something done* are that *have* is slightly more formal than *get*, and that *get* is more frequent than *have* in the imperative form.

NON-CAUSATIVE USES OF HAVE AND GET

Have and *get* are also used to refer to events which happened to someone, but were outside their control.

*After being late for work every day for two weeks, Billy **had his pay reduced**.
I stood so close to the fire that I **got my legs burnt**.*

EXERCISE 1

Rewrite these sentences using *have* or *get*.

1. The mechanic changed the oil in my car.

2. The hairdresser cut my hair in a completely different style.

3. A decorator has repainted our house.

4. A friend of mine, who's an electrician, is going to repair my DVD player next week.

5. My jacket is being cleaned at a specialist cleaner's.

6. The town hall has just been rebuilt for the council.

EXERCISE 2

Match a word from 1-8 with something that is done by that person or in that place. Then make sentences using all the information and the verb in brackets.

You may have to change the words or add new ones. An example is given.

1. hairdresser's	vaccinate dogs (have)
2. optician's	do annual accounts (have)
3. dentist's	service cars (get)
4. doctor's	test eyes (have)
5. vet's	design new houses (have)
6. garage	cut hair (get)
7. architect	take out teeth (have)
8. accountant	take blood pressure

Example:

1. Tomorrow *I'm going to the hairdresser's to get my hair cut.*
2. Yesterday...
3. This afternoon...
4. Last week...
5. Next Saturday...
6. The day before yesterday...
7. Last year...
8. Next week...

KEY CAUSATIVE VERBS: HAVE/GET SOMETHING DONE

EXERCISE 1

Rewrite these sentences using *have* or *get*.

1. The mechanic changed the oil in my car.

I had the oil in my car changed.

2. The hairdresser cut my hair in a completely different style.

I had my hair cut in a completely new style.

3. A decorator has repainted our house.

We have had our house repainted.

4. A friend of mine, who's an electrician, is going to repair my DVD player next week.

I'm going to have my DVD player repaired next week by a friend of mine, who's an electrician.

5. My jacket is being cleaned at a specialist cleaner's.

I'm having my jacket cleaned at a specialist cleaner's.

6. The town hall has just been rebuilt for the council.

The council have just had the town hall rebuilt.

EXERCISE 2

Match a word from 1-8 with something that is done by that person or in that place. Then make sentences using all the information and the verb in brackets.

You may have to change the words or add new ones. An example is given.

1. Tomorrow *I'm going to the hairdresser's to get my hair cut.*
2. Yesterday *I went to the optician's to have my eyes tested.*
3. This afternoon *I'm going to the dentist to have a tooth taken out.*
4. Last week *I went to the doctor's to have my blood pressure taken.*
5. Next Saturday *I'm going to the vet's to have my dog vaccinated.*
6. The day before yesterday *I went to the garage to get my car serviced.*
7. Last year *I saw the architect to have my new house designed.*
8. Next week *I'm talking my accountant to have my annual accounts done.*

1 Finish the sentences with 'have something done' in the correct form.

- 1 Why does he ?
(all his shoes/ make)
- 2 I can't read Greek so I am
(the documents/ translate)
- 3 The house was damp so last winter we
(central heating/ install)
- 4 The hall was dark so last year we
(another window/ put in)
- 5 He went to a garage to
(the puncture/ mend)
- 6 If you hate cleaning fish, why don't you
at the fishmonger's? *(it/ clean)*
- 7 He didn't like the colour of the curtains so he
(them/ change)
- 8 Your roof is leaking, you should
(it/ repair)
- 9 That tooth is giving you a lot of trouble. You should
(it/ take out)

2 Rewrite the sentences using 'have/get something done'.

Example: I'm going to get the shoemaker to mend my shoes.
I'm going to have/get my shoes mended.

- 1 They are going to get an architect to design their new house.
.....
- 2 She wanted to get a dressmaker to alter her dress.
.....
- 3 We were thinking of getting the gardener to cut the grass.
.....
- 4 You really must get someone to test your eyes.
.....
- 5 I'd really like to get someone to repaint my car, but I can't afford it.
.....

- 6 Can't you get someone to do the translation?
.....
- 7 I'm glad to say the Council are getting someone to mend the road.
.....

3 Rewrite the sentences using the correct form of 'have something done'. Omit the words underlined.

Example: She went to a chiropodist and he treated her feet.
She had her feet treated.

- 1 I pay a window cleaner to clean my windows every month.
.....
- 2 I pay a garage to grease my car.
.....
- 3 The shoe-mender is repairing my shoes for me.
.....
- 4 I can't buy clothes to fit me so I employ a tailor to make them for me.
.....
- 5 I paid a watchmaker to clean my watch.
.....
- 6 I asked the fishmonger to open the oysters for me.
.....
- 7 I went to a jeweller and he pierced my ears for me.
.....
- 8 They employed builders to put a new roof on the house.
.....
- 9 The tap kept dripping so I sent for a plumber to see to it.
.....
- 10 He paid a lorry driver to tow the car to a garage.
.....

1 Finish the sentences with 'have something done' in the correct form.

- 1 Why does he have all his shoes made ?
(all his shoes/ make)
- 2 I can't read Greek so I am having the documents translated.
(the documents/ translate)
- 3 The house was damp so last winter we had central heating installed.
(central heating/ install)
- 4 The hall was dark so last year we had another window put in.
(another window/ put in)
- 5 He went to a garage to have the puncture mended.
(the puncture/ mend)
- 6 If you hate cleaning fish, why don't you have it cleaned
at the fishmonger's? (it/ clean)
- 7 He didn't like the colour of the curtains so he had them changed.
(them/ change)
- 8 Your roof is leaking, you should have it repaired.
(it/ repair)
- 9 That tooth is giving you a lot of trouble. You should have it taken out.
(it/ take out)

2 Rewrite the sentences using 'have/get something done'.

Example: I'm going to get the shoemaker to mend my shoes.
I'm going to have/get my shoes mended.

- 1 They are going to get an architect to design their new house.
They are going to get their new house designed (by an architect).
- 2 She wanted to get a dressmaker to alter her dress.
She wanted to have her dress altered.
- 3 We were thinking of getting the gardener to cut the grass.
We were thinking of getting the grass cut.
- 4 You really must get someone to test your eyes.
You really must get your eyes tested.
- 5 I'd really like to get someone to repaint my car, but I can't afford it.
I'd like to have my car repainted, but I can't afford it.

- 6 Can't you get someone to do the translation?
Can't you get the translation done?

- 7 I'm glad to say the Council are getting someone to mend the road.
I'm glad to say the Council are getting the road mended.

3 Rewrite the sentences using the correct form of 'have something done'. Omit the words underlined.

Example: She went to a chiropodist and he treated her feet.
She had her feet treated.

- 1 I pay a window cleaner to clean my windows every month.
I have my windows cleaned every month.
- 2 I pay a garage to grease my car.
I have my car greased
- 3 The shoe-mender is repairing my shoes for me.
I'm having my shoes repaired.
- 4 I can't buy clothes to fit me so I employ a tailor to make them for me.
I can't buy clothes to fit me so I have them made.
- 5 I paid a watchmaker to clean my watch.
I had my watch cleaned.
- 6 I asked the fishmonger to open the oysters for me.
I had the oysters opened.
- 7 I went to a jeweller and he pierced my ears for me.
I had my ears pierced.
- 8 They employed builders to put a new roof on the house.
They had a new roof put.
- 9 The tap kept dripping so I sent for a plumber to see to it.
The tap kept dripping so I had it seen to.
- 10 He paid a lorry driver to tow the car to a garage.
He had the car towed to a garage.

MAKE DO

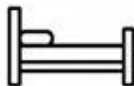
VERBS

make

*often creating sth.
from nothing*



an appointment
breakfast, lunch, dinner
a change
a choice, a decision
a complaint
a difference
an effort
an exception
an excuse
a fortune, money
friends
fun of sby
love
a mess, a mistake
a noise, a sound
a phone call
plans
progress
the bed
a wish



do



*often a task or
part of a routine*

badly, well
your best
business
a course, an exam
damage, harm
the dishes, the washing up
a drawing
an exercise, exercise
a favour
good
your hair, your make-up
homework, housework
a job
the laundry, the washing
research
something right/wrong
the shopping
something, nothing, anything
sport
work



CORK ENGLISH TEACHER



housework
homework
work/job
business

working

anything
something
nothing
everything

general

your hair
washing
laundry
the dishes
shopping
gardening
ironing

housework

exercises
a course

training

crossword
a favour
damage
good

exceptions

DO
action·task·activity

a sound/noise
a comment
a joke
a phone call

speaking

breakfast
lunch
dinner
food
a cup of tea

foods·meals

your bed
a mess
friends
love
a journey

exceptions

money
profit

money

a choice
a decision
a promise
an effort
a suggestion
a mistake

intangible

a dress
a painting

creating

MAKE
constructing·building·creating

Do

We use the verb '**do**' when someone performs an action, activity or task.

do a crossword

do the laundry

do the ironing

do the washing

do the washing up

'**Do**' is often used when referring to work of any kind.

*do your **work***

*do **homework***

*do **housework***

Note - these activities do not usually produce a physical object.

'Do' for General Ideas

Use the verb '**do**' when speaking about things in general. In other words, to describe an action without saying exactly what the action is. This form is often used with the words 'something, nothing, anything, everything, etc.'

*I'm not doing anything today. He does everything for his mother.
She's doing nothing.*

Important Expressions with 'Do'

There are a number of standard expressions that take the verb 'do'. The best solution is to try to learn them.

do badly

do a favour

do well

do business

do good

do your best

do the dishes

do harm

do your hair

Make

We use the verb **'make'** for constructing, building or creating.

make a dress

make food

make a cup of tea / coffee

'Make' is often used when referring to preparing food of any kind.

make a meal - breakfast / lunch / dinner

Note - these activities usually create something that you can touch.

Important Expressions with 'Make'

There are a number of standard expressions that take the verb **'make'**. The best solution is to try to learn them.

<i>make arrangements</i>	<i>make a fuss</i>	<i>make a point</i>
<i>make a choice</i>	<i>make a journey</i>	<i>make a profit</i>
<i>make a comment</i>	<i>make love</i>	<i>make a promise</i>
<i>make a decision</i>	<i>make a mess</i>	<i>make a remark</i>
<i>make a difference</i>	<i>make a mistake</i>	<i>make a sound</i>
<i>make an effort</i>	<i>make money</i>	<i>make a speech</i>
<i>make an enquiry</i>	<i>make a move</i>	<i>make a suggestion</i>
<i>make an excuse</i>	<i>make a noise</i>	<i>make time</i>
<i>make a fool of yourself</i>	<i>make a payment</i>	<i>make a visit</i>
<i>make a fortune</i>	<i>make a phone call</i>	<i>make your bed</i>
<i>make friends</i>	<i>make a plan</i>	

EXAMPLES WITH TRANSLATION INTO SPANISH

Mr Jones is a house husband... – El Sr Jones es amo de casa...

He has to **do the housework**.

Él tiene que hacer el trabajo de la casa.

He has to **do the cooking**.

Él tiene que cocinar.

He has to **do the washing up**.

Él tiene que fregar los platos.

He has to **do the washing/the laundry**.

Él tiene que lavar la ropa sucia.

He has to **do the shopping**.

Él tiene que hacer la compra.

He has to **do the ironing**.

Él tiene que planchar la ropa.

He has to **do the dusting**.

Él tiene que quitar el polvo a las cosas.

He has to **make the beds**.

Él tiene que hacer las camas.

He has to **make breakfast**.

Él tiene que hacer el desayuno.

He has to **make lunch**.

Él tiene que hacer el almuerzo.

He has to **make dinner**.

Él tiene que hacer la cena.

He has to **make coffee/tea**.

Él tiene que hacer café/té.

He has to **make a cake**.

Él tiene que hacer un pastel.

He has to **make sure that the house is in order**.

Él tiene que asegurarse de que la casa esté en orden.

Mr. Black is a businessman... – El Sr Black es un hombre de negocios...

He is **doing business** with important companies.

Él está haciendo negocios con firmas importantes.

He is **doing well** in his job.

Va bien en su trabajo.

He **does his best** to improve his company.

Hace lo mejor que puede para mejorar su empresa.

He is **making a lot of money**.

Está haciendo un montón de dinero.

He is **making a fortune**.

Está haciendo una fortuna.

He **doesn't like to make mistakes**.

No le gusta cometer errores.

Sometimes he **makes a fuss** when something goes wrong.

Algunas veces monta un lío cuando algo sale mal.

He rarely **makes jokes**.

Casi nunca hace chistes.

He **doesn't have much time to make friends**.

No tiene mucho tiempo para hacer amigos.

He is **making an effort to increase sales**.

Está haciendo un esfuerzo para aumentar las ventas.

He **would like to make a trip/journey**.

Le gustaría hacer un viaje.

His employees **make fun of him**.

Sus empleados se burlan de él.

He **has to make a speech for a meeting**.

Tiene que hacer un discurso para una reunión.

He **has to make decisions every day**.

Tiene que tomar decisiones todos los días.

His secretary **makes appointments for him**.

Su secretaria arregla citas para él.

She **also makes telephone calls and reservations**.

También hace llamadas telefónicas y reservas.

He **says that his employees make trouble**.

Él dice que sus empleados causan problemas.

He **also says that children make a lot of noise**.

También dice que los niños hacen mucho ruido.

He **often makes a fool of himself**.

A menudo se pone en ridículo.

He **makes use of his authority to threaten people**.

Utiliza su autoridad para amenazar a las personas.

Some of his decisions don't make sense.

Algunas de sus decisiones no tienen sentido.

Otros ejemplos:

John **doesn't like to do his homework**.

A John no le gusta hacer su tarea.

He is **doing badly at school**. (He is not **doing well**)

No va bien en la escuela. (No le está yendo bien)

The hurricane **did a lot of damage in the area**.

El huracán causó mucho daño en la zona.

The policeman was **doing his duty** when he arrested the thief.

El policía estaba cumpliendo con su deber cuando arrestó al ladrón.

Mary **did her hair and her face and left for the party**.

Mary se peinó, se maquilló y salió para la fiesta.

"Can you **do me a favour**?"

¿Me puedes hacer un favor?

"What are you **doing here**?"

¿Qué estás haciendo aquí?

They were **making love** in the back seat of their car.
Ellos estaban haciendo el amor en el asiento trasero de su auto.
Johnny made a mess in his room.
Johnny hizo un desorden/desordenó su habitación.
Bill made his way to the university.
Bill se dirigió a la universidad.
Jane made an excuse and left.
Jane se disculpó y se marchó.
"I want to **make a complaint** about the service in this hotel".
Quiero presentar una queja sobre el servicio en este hotel.

A veces no se usa en inglés ni DO ni MAKE para casos en los que en castellano usamos HACER.

Traduce estas frases al inglés

1. ¿Has hecho tus deberes?
2. No me hagas más preguntas.
3. Hicimos muchas fotos.
4. ¿Cuándo tienes que hacer el examen?
5. Hicimos una reserva para seis personas.
6. ¿Qué vas a hacer este fin de semana?
7. Esa empresa hace buenos guantes.
8. Siempre cometes el mismo error.
9. Mi coche está haciendo un ruido raro.
10. ¿Te importaría hacernos una foto?

Respuestas

1. Have you done your homework?
2. Don't ask me any more questions.
2. We took a lot of pictures.
3. When do you have to take the test?
4. We made a reservation for six people.
5. What are you going to do this weekend?
6. That company makes good gloves.
8. You always make the same mistake.
9. My car is making a weird noise.
10. Would you mind taking our picture?

Do or Make Quiz

1. What do you _____ for a living?
2. Have you already _____ your homework?
3. My husband _____ the grocery shopping.
4. Amber _____ badly on her geography exam.
5. The children _____ a mess in the kitchen.
6. We are having guests tonight, so please _____ your bed.
7. I only _____ one mistake in my English test.
8. I have to ask you to _____ me a favour.
9. Have you and your friend _____ a decision yet?
10. Please excuse me while I _____ a phonecall.

Answers Do or Make Quiz	3 does	7 made
1 do	4 did	8 do
2 done	5 made	9 made
	6 make	10 make

Make or Do

- There is no rule to deduce when to use *make* or *do* with an expression. Although *make* usually means “create, manufacture”, this definition is not applicable in lots of cases.
- The only fixed rule is **do + the + verb (-ing)**: *do the ironing / shopping / washing up...*

- **Make**

meaning in Spanish

- make a breakthrough	hacer un descubrimiento, avanzar
- make certain	asegurar
- make a discovery	hacer un descubrimiento
- make a mistake	cometer un error
- make sense	tener sentido
- make sure (that)	asegurarse de que...
- make an appointment	concertar una cita (médico, abogado, ...)
- make arrangements	hacer preparativos / planes
- make a bid	hacer una oferta, pujar
- make a cancellation	cancelar
- make a charge for	cobrar a alguien por algo
- make a cheque out to	hacer un cheque a alguien
- make a complaint	presentar una queja
- make a concession	hacer un descuento
- make contact with	contactar con
- make demands on	exigir
- make an enquiry/inquiry	hacer una consulta
- make headway	progresar, hacer un progreso
- make an investment	realizar una inversión
- make a loss	perder, registrar pérdidas
- make money	hacer dinero
- make an offer	hacer una oferta
- make a packet	ganar un montón de dinero (coloquial)
- make an effort	hacer un esfuerzo
- make a phone call	hacer una llamada
- make a point of doing something	hacer algo específicamente
- make a request	hacer un petición
- make preparations	hacer preparativos
- make progress	progresar
- make a profit	tener beneficios
- make a provision	hacer previsiones
- make someone redundant	despedir por regulación de empleo
- make a speech/statement/declaration	dar un discurso / enunciar / hacer una declaración
- make a suggestion	hacer una sugerencia
- make a trip	hacer un viaje breve / excursión
- make use of	hacer uso de...
- make work for someone	dar más trabajo a alguien poniéndole dificultades
- make the bed	hacer la cama
- make breakfast/lunch/dinner	hacer el desayuno / la comida / la cena
- make a cake	hacer café
- make (a cup of) coffee/tea	hacer una taza de café / té
- make ends meet	ganar suficiente para cubrir los gastos

- make a mess	desordenar, ensuciar
- make amends	enmendar
- make the best of	aprovechar al máximo algo
- make a choice	hacer una elección
- make a confession	confesar
- make someone's day	alegrar el día a alguien
- make a difference	cambiar algo
- make all the difference	cambiar por completo algo
- make an excuse	poner una excusa
- make an exception	hacer una excepción
- make eyes at	hacerle ojitos a alguien
- make faces	hacer gestos (con la cara)
- make a fool of	ridiculizar
- make friends with	hacerse amigo/a de...
- make fun of	reirse de...
- make a fuss about	armar jaleo por algo
- make a habit of ...+ing	convertir algo en costumbre
- make haste	darse prisa
- make love	hacer el amor
- make a journey	hacer un viaje (largo)
- make the most of	aprovechar al máximo algo
- make (a) noise	hacer (un) ruido
- make peace with	hacer las paces con...
- make trouble	causar problemas
- make room for	hacer sitio para...
- make a success of something	convertir algo en un éxito
- make up your mind (to)	decidirse a...
- make war (on someone)	hacer la guerra a alguien
- make a will	hacer testamento
- make one's way to	ir a un sitio, dirigirse a...
- make way for	permitir
- make a pass at someone	insinuarle a alguien (coloquial)
- make a deal (Br. English)	hacer un trato
- make an example of someone	hacer un ejemplo de alguien

• **Do**

meaning in Spanish

- do an experiment	hacer un experimento
- do an operation	hacer una operación
- do research	investigar
- do a test	hacer un test
- do business	hacer negocios
- do a deal (Am English)	hacer un trato
- do a (good/bad) job	hacer un (buen/mal) trabajo
- do something for a living	hacer algo para ganarse la vida
- do a roaring trade	tener un negocio exitoso
- do some/any work	hacer algo de trabajo, trabajar un poco
- do the housework	hacer las tareas domésticas
- do the shopping/ironing/cleaning...	hacer la compra, planchar, limpiar...
- do repairs	hacer reparaciones, reparar
- do away with	eliminar, abolir
- do your best	hacer algo lo mejor que puedas
- do your bit	hacer tu parte, contribuir
- do damage	dañar
- do your duty	cumplir con tu deber
- do an exam	hacer un examen
- do evil	hacer el mal
- do someone a favour	hacerle un favor a alguien
- do good	hacer bien, sentar bien
- do someone a good turn	hacerle un favor a alguien
- do harm	hacer daño
- do nothing	no hacer nada
- do something/anything	hacer algo
- do wonders (for)	hacer maravillas para/a...
- could do with	hacer bien, necesitar, sentar bien
- do justice to	hacer justicia a ...
- do military service	hacer el servicio militar
- do your homework	hacer los deberes

DO

30 mph (miles per hour)	Many people do more than 30 mph through this town. It's very dangerous.
badly	She did very badly on the exam, so she'll have to retake it.
your best	Don't worry about getting everything correct. Just do your best.
business	It's been a pleasure doing business with you.
chores	I have to go home and do some chores this afternoon.
a course	John has decided to do a course in computing this autumn.
a crossword	She sat on the sofa, doing a crossword and drinking tea.
damage	The storm has done a lot of damage to the house.
the dishes / the washing up	I really hate doing the dishes. I'm hoping to buy a dishwasher this year.
a drawing	The little boy spent hours doing a drawing.
your duty	He has to do his duty and look after his elderly parents.
an exam	I have to do three exams and write a huge essay this term.
exercise	Julie likes doing exercise, especially running.
an exercise	The teacher asked us to do a lot of grammar exercises over the holidays.
someone a favour	My friend did me a huge favour and lent me some money.
the gardening	David often spends Sunday afternoons doing gardening.
good	She helps homeless people and tries to do good.
you good	You should eat your vegetables. They'll do you good!
your hair	Allie spends ages doing her hair in the morning.
harm	I spilt coffee on my suit and tried to clean it, but I did more harm than good. It looks even worse now!
homework	Have you finished doing your homework?
housework	Let's do the housework quickly this morning, then we can go out for lunch.
the ironing	My mother listens to the radio while she does the ironing.
a job	I think the students did a great job with this essay. It's excellent.
the laundry / the washing	He did the laundry, cleaned the house, and made dinner.
your nails	Jenny likes to do her nails each week.
a painting	There was an old man sitting on the bank of the river, doing a painting.
paperwork	Does everybody hate doing paperwork?
research	I'm doing some research for my thesis at the moment.
the shopping	I'll do the shopping tomorrow morning. We need milk, bread, pasta and bananas.

time (= be in prison)	He broke into a bank, was caught by the police, and now he's doing time.
well	My sister is doing well in her new job.
work	Unfortunately, Lucy does a lot of work at the weekends.
your worst	I've bought all new winter clothes – boots, a coat and a very warm hat. Weather, do your worst!

MAKE:

amends	I'm so sorry that I upset you – how can I make amends?
an appointment	She had toothache, so she made an appointment with the dentist for the following day.
arrangements	Okay, so we're going to go on holiday in September. Let's make some arrangements. I'll find a hotel, and you can look at flights.
an attempt	I know we might not catch the plane, but let's at least make an attempt to be on time.
believe	The children's favourite game is to make believe that they are kings and queens from long ago.
certain	I think the café opens at six, but let's make certain. I don't want to be standing in the street waiting!
a change	I've made some changes to the document.
a choice	Which job are you going to take? You need to make a choice.
a comment	My mother made a comment about my shoes.
a complaint	The food took so long to arrive that Julie made complaint to the manager.
a confession	I'd like to make a confession. I was the one who ate the last of the chocolate.
a date	I'd love to see you soon. How about we make a date for next week?
a decision	I've made my decision. I'm going to go back to university.
a difference	Going to the gym has really made a difference to how I feel.
a discovery	When John was last in London he made a discovery – a beautiful little café in a quiet street.
an effort	You're not trying hard enough! Make an effort!
an error	He made several errors on the report, and the boss told him to rewrite it.
your escape	The bank robbers took £10,000 from the safe and then made their escape.
an exception	Usually the children aren't allowed to watch TV but I made an exception today since the weather was so horrible.
an excuse	Why was Lisa late? Did she make an excuse?
a face	The child took a bite of the broccoli and made a face.
a fire	We put up our tent, made a fire, and had a hot drink.
a fool of yourself	You shouldn't sing in front of everyone! You'll make a fool of yourself.

a fortune	Lucy made a fortune when she sold her company. Now she doesn't have to work.
friends	She loved university and made lots of friends.
fun of	The children love to make fun of the teacher – but only when she's not looking.
a fuss	It's okay, I'm fine, it's just a cough. Don't make a fuss!
an impression	Jenny certainly made an impression last night! All my friends are asking about her.
a joke	The interview was very tense at the beginning, but then John made a joke, and after that it was much more relaxed.
a journey	Because of the snow, try not to make any journeys which are not absolutely essential.
a list	First, I must make a list of all the things I need to do.
a loss	Their business made a loss the first year, but did much better after that.
love	The hero and the heroine made love in the film.
a mess	What a mess you've made! Can't you tidy up a bit?
a mistake	She made so many mistakes in her essay that the teacher couldn't understand it.
money	John made a lot of money in his twenties and was able to retire at the age of 35.
a move	Look how late it is! Let's make a move.
a noise	Please try not to make a noise when you come home, because I'll be asleep.
an observation	Could I make an observation? I don't think some of our customers like the new adverts.
an offer	She made an offer on a house. She's nervous because she'll find out today if it has been accepted, and she really wants to buy that house.
a payment	Hello? I'd like to make a credit card payment, please.
a phone call	I'm going to go outside and make a phone call. It's too noisy in here.
plans	David is making plans to move to Paris.
a point	The professor used lots of examples to make his point.
a prediction	The journalist made a prediction about the economy, but in the end it wasn't correct.
a profit	His business made a profit from the beginning.
progress	Finally, after being stuck in a traffic jam for an hour, we're making some progress! We'll arrive by 8pm.
a promise	I must study hard today. I made a promise to my mum that I wouldn't fail any more exams.
a remark	John was upset because the boss made a negative remark about his work.
a reservation	Could you call the restaurant and make a reservation for tonight?
a scene	Susie made a scene in the café when her order was wrong. She shouted at all the staff and demanded to speak to the manager.
a sound	Don't make a sound! We need to be completely quiet.

a speech	The bride's father often makes a speech at her wedding.
a suggestion	Could I make a suggestion? How about going out for dinner?
sure	I don't think I left the gate open, but I'm just going to go and make sure.
the bed	Could you please make the bed before you leave the house? Otherwise it looks so messy with the duvet and the pillows everywhere.
time (=find time to do something)	Everybody's busy, but you need to make time to study. Otherwise you won't be able to get a better job.
trouble	That employee is trying to make trouble. He is always telling the boss bad things about his colleagues.
a visit	I'll call you this afternoon – I need to make a visit to my granny this morning.
your mind up	Do you want chocolate or strawberry ice cream? Make your mind up quickly!
your way	After the film, John made his way to a café, where he had two cups of coffee and some cake.

'Make' or 'Do' Exercise 4

Put in the correct form of 'make' or 'do':

1. How much money does a waitress _____?
2. Could you _____ the laundry today? We have no clean clothes.
3. She spent the evening watching black and white films and _____ her nails.
4. Did their new business _____ a profit last year?
5. The teacher _____ some very positive remarks about Susie's work.
6. There's so much paperwork to _____! I'll be here all night
7. The CEO of the company _____ some interesting observations during his visit to our department.
8. I'd like to _____ Julie an offer of a job. It would be full time in our office.
9. There was a man sitting on the pier earlier. He was _____ a painting of the boats.
10. This lecture is so boring! Let's _____ an escape during the break and go to the café!
11. William _____ an excuse to the teacher about why he was late, but she didn't believe him.
12. Stop talking and _____ some work!
13. Alison can't come tonight. She'd already _____ plans.
14. I'm going to work all weekend. I really want to _____ some progress on this project.
15. Could you please _____ sure that the money has gone into the correct bank account?
16. It takes Lizzie an hour a day to _____ the washing up. She would love to have a dishwasher.
17. I offered the job to Ian, and I said he had until Monday to _____ his mind up.

18. In the morning she gets up, has a shower and gets dressed, then _____
the bed. After that she goes downstairs and has breakfast.
19. John and Lucy _____ their way through the crowded streets to their
hotel.
20. Graham _____ really well in the tennis competition. He came second
out of over a hundred people.

Answers:

1. How much money does a waitress make?
2. Could you do the laundry today? We have no clean clothes.
3. She spent the evening watching black and white films and doing her nails.
4. Did their new business make a profit last year?
5. The teacher made some very positive remarks about Susie's work.
6. There's so much paperwork to do! I'll be here all night
7. The CEO of the company made some interesting observations during his visit to our department.
8. I'd like to make Julie an offer of a job. It would be full-time in our office.
9. There was a man sitting on the pier earlier. He was doing a painting of the boats. !
10. This lecture is so boring! Let's make an escape during the break and go to the café!
11. William made an excuse to the teacher about why he was late, but she didn't believe him.
12. Stop talking and do some work!
13. Alison can't come tonight. She'd already made plans.
14. I'm going to work all weekend. I really want to make some progress on this project.
15. Could you please make sure that the money has gone into the correct bank account?
16. It takes Lizzie an hour a day to do the washing up. She would love to have a dishwasher.
17. I offered the job to Ian, and said he had until Monday to make his mind up.
18. In the morning she gets up, has a shower and gets dressed, then makes the bed. After that she goes downstairs and has breakfast.
19. John and Lucy made their way through the crowded streets to their hotel.
20. Graham did really well in the tennis competition. He came second out of over a hundred people.

Reported speech – Estilo Indirecto

a. Statements

1) If the sentence starts **in the present**, there is **no backshift of tenses** in Reported speech.

Example: Susan: "I **work** in an office." Susan **says that** she **works** in an office.

2) If the sentence starts **in the past**, there is often **backshift of tenses** in Reported speech. (see: Note)

Example: Susan: "I **work** in an office." Susan **said that** she **worked** in an office.

Backshift of tenses	
from	to
Simple Present	Simple Past
Simple Past	Past Perfect
Present Perfect	
Past Perfect	
will	would
Progressive forms	
am/are/is	was/were
was/were	had been
has been	
had been	

Backshift of tenses	
from	to
Peter: "I work in the garden."	Peter said that he worked in the garden.
Peter: "I worked in the garden."	Peter said that he had worked in the garden.
Peter: "I have worked in the garden."	
Peter: "I had worked in the garden."	
Peter: "I will work in the garden."	Peter said that he would work in the garden.
Peter: "I can work in the garden."	Peter said that he could work in the garden.
Peter: "I may work in the garden."	Peter said that he might work in the garden.
Peter: "I would work in the garden." (could, might, should, ought to)	Peter said that he would work in the garden. (could, might, should, ought to)
Progressive forms	
Peter: "I'm working in the garden."	Peter said that he was working in the garden.
Peter: "I was working in the garden."	Peter said that he had been working in the garden.
Peter: "I have been working in the garden."	
Peter: "I had been working in the garden."	

If the sentence contains an expression of time, you must change it as well.

Peter: "I worked in the garden **yesterday**."
Peter said that he had worked in the garden **the day before**.

Shifting of expressions of time

this (evening)	that (evening)
today/this day	that day
these (days)	those (days)
now	then
(a week) ago	(a week) before
last weekend	the weekend before / the previous weekend
here	there
next (week)	the following (week)
tomorrow	the next/following day

Note:

In some cases the backshift of tenses is not necessary, e.g. when statements are still true.

John: "My brother is at Leipzig university."
John said that his brother was at Leipzig university. **or**
John said that his brother is at Leipzig university.

or

Mandy: "The sun rises in the East."
Mandy said that the sun rose in the East. **or**
Mandy said that the sun rises in the East.

b. Reported questions

If you put a question into Reported speech there are some steps which are the same like in **statements**: (changing of the person, backshift of tenses, changing of expressions of time).

In Reported speech there is no question anymore, the sentence becomes a statement.
That's why the word order is: **subject - verb**

Question without question words (yes/no questions):
Peter: "**Do** you **play** football?" - Peter asked me **whether (if)** I **played** football.

Question with question words:
Peter: "**When** do you **play** football?" - Peter asked me **when** I **played** football.

c. Reported commands

If you put a command into Reported speech there are some steps which are the same like in **statements**: (changing of the person, backshift of tenses, changing of expressions of time).

The form is mostly: form of to **tell + to + infinitive**.

Affirmative commands	Negative commands
Father: "Do your homework."	Teacher. "Don't talk to your neighbour."
Father told me to do my homework.	The teacher told me not to talk to my neighbour.

PUT THE SENTENCES INTO REPORTED SPEECH:

- A. He said: "I will come here tomorrow".
- B. She said: "I was very tired yesterday".
- C. He said. "I am working a lot this week".
- D. John said: "My mother is a teacher".
- E. He said: " We don't like tennis".
- F. He said: "I will come here tomorrow".
- G. She said: "I was very tired yesterday".
- H. He said. "I am working a lot this week".
- I. John said: "My mother is a teacher".
- J. He said: " We don't like tennis".
- K. Mary said: "We can go to the cinema tonight".
- L. He said: "The books are on the table".
- M. She said: "I have seen that film".
- N. He said: "We didn't eat rice".
- O. Anthony said: "My sister has to study more".

ANSWERS:

- A. He said that he would go there the following day.
- B. She said that she had been very tired the day before.
- C. He said that he was working a lot that week.
- D. John said that his mother was a teacher.
- E. He said that they didn't like tennis.
- F. He said that he would go there the following day.
- G. She said that she had been very tired the day before.
- H. He said that he was working a lot that week.
- I. John said that his mother was a teacher.
- J. He said that they didn't like tennis.
- K. Mary said that they could go to the cinema that night.
- L. He said that the books were on the table.
- M. She said that she had seen that film.
- N. He said that they hadn't eaten rice.
- O. Anthony said that his sister had to study more.

DIRECT SPEECH		REPORTED SPEECH
Present simple He said, "I want to watch a film"	➔	Past Simple He said (that) he wanted to watch a film
Present Continuous He said, "Jane is sleeping."	➔	Past Continuous He said (that) Jane was sleeping.
Present Perfect She said, "I have bought a new dress."	➔	Past Perfect She said (that) she had bought a new dress.
Past Simple Alex said, "I finished my homework."	➔	Past Perfect Alex said (that) he had finished his homework.
Will She said, "I will always love Tom."	➔	Would She said (that) she would always love Tom.
Can Tom said, "I can carry 50 kg."	➔	Could Tom said (that) he could carry 50 kg.
May Ben said "It may rain."	➔	Might Ben said (that) it might rain.
Must He said, "Everybody must obey the rules."	➔	Had to He said (that) everybody had to obey the rules.
Have to She said, "I have to go home."	➔	Had to She said (that) she had to go home.

REPORTED SPEECH/ESTILO INDIRECTO. EXERCISES

'Say' and 'Tell'

Put in 'said' or 'told':

1. Julie _____ that she would join us after work.
2. She _____ me that she was going running this evening.
3. John _____ us that he couldn't come to the party.
4. John _____ that he had been to the cinema at the weekend.
5. She _____ them she wanted to quit.
6. David _____ he was going to arrive at eight.
7. They _____ that they didn't want to meet us on Tuesday.
8. I _____ him I wasn't impressed.
9. Lucy _____ Julie that she was leaving on Wednesday.
10. We _____ that we were going on holiday the following week.
11. Jack _____ my mother he would be in Spain this week.
12. I _____ that I hated mushrooms.
13. She _____ she loved chocolate.
14. They _____ they were meeting Luke today.
15. They _____ us they were going to the museum this afternoon.
16. He _____ he wouldn't start without us.
17. I _____ them I'd bring pudding.
18. Jonathan _____ it would rain today.
19. They _____ us that it was fine to come late.
20. The boss _____ me that I should do more work on this report.

Answers:

1. Julie said that she would join us after work.
2. She told me that she was going running this evening.
3. John told us that he couldn't come to the party.
4. John said that he had been to the cinema at the weekend.
5. She told them she wanted to quit.
6. David said he was going to arrive at eight.
7. They said that they didn't want to meet us on Tuesday.
8. I told him I wasn't impressed.
9. Lucy told Julie that she was leaving on Wednesday.
10. We said that we were going on holiday the following week.
11. Jack told my mother he would be in Spain this week.
12. I said that I hated mushrooms.
13. She said she loved chocolate.
14. They said they were meeting Luke today.
15. They told us they were going to the museum this afternoon.
16. He said he wouldn't start without us.
17. I told them I'd bring pudding.
18. Jonathan said it would rain today.
19. They told us that it was fine to come late.
20. The boss told me that I should do some more work on this report.

Reported Statements: Present Simple

1. "I live in New York"

She said _____

2. "He works in a bank"

She told me _____

3. "Julie doesn't like going out much"

She said _____

4. "I don't have a computer"

She said _____

5. "They never arrive on time"

She said _____

6. "We often meet friends in London at the weekend"

He told me _____

7. "David doesn't have any children"

She said _____

8. "I don't go to the gym very often"

She said _____

9. "Lucy owns three flats in the city"

She said _____

10. "I never get up early on Sundays"

She said _____

11. "She meets her boyfriend at the cinema every Friday night"

He said _____

12. "We don't travel much"

She said _____

13. "John doesn't live in Japan any more"

She said _____

14. "They work in Hong Kong"

She told me _____

15. "I have to work until seven or eight pm every night"

She said _____

16. "I don't want to go to the theatre next weekend"

She said _____

17. "We like working in Paris"

She said _____

18. "She doesn't have enough time to do everything"

She said _____

19. "Tony hates mushrooms"

She told me _____

20. "They often go on holiday in July"

She said _____

ANSWERS:

1. She said she lived in New York.

2. She told me he worked in a bank.

3. She said Julie didn't like going out much.
4. She said she didn't have a computer .
5. She said they never arrived on time.
6. He told me they often met friends in London at the weekend.
7. She said David didn't have any children.
8. She said she didn't go to the gym very often.
9. She said Lucy owned three flats in the city.
10. She said she never got up early on Sundays.
11. He said she met her boyfriend at the cinema every Friday night.
12. She said they didn't travel much.
13. She said John didn't live in Japan any more.
14. She told me they worked in Hong Kong.
15. She said she had to work until seven or eight pm every night.
16. She said she didn't want to go to the theatre next weekend.
17. She said they liked working in Paris.
18. She said she didn't have enough time to do everything.
19. She told me Tony hated mushrooms.
20. She said they often went on holiday in July.

Reported Statements: Present Continuous

1. "I'm sleeping"
She told me _____
2. "We're working"
She told me _____
3. "She's coming to the party"
She told me _____
4. "He's talking on the telephone"
She told me _____
5. "Lucy is reading a book in front of the fire"
She told me _____
6. "I'm not going out"
She said _____
7. "We are not visiting Paris during our trip"
She said _____
8. "I'm listening to my new CD"
She said _____
9. "John is working in a bar for the summer"
She told me _____
10. "I'm not going to go on holiday"
She told me _____
11. "He isn't living in Beijing"
She told me _____
12. "I'm taking the train to Berlin"
She told me _____
13. "He is never coming back"
She told me _____

14. "Jill is studying a lot"

She told me _____

15. "I'm not meeting Julie"

She told me _____

16. "We aren't renting a flat"

She said _____

17. "They are are visiting the museum"

She said _____

18. "She's eating dinner"

She said _____

19. "We aren't going to the library"

She said _____

20. "I'm coming"

She said _____

Answers:

1. She told me she was sleeping.
2. She told me that they were working.
3. She told me she was coming to the party.
4. She told me he was talking on the telephone.
5. She told me Lucy was reading a book in front of the fire.
6. She said she wasn't going out.
7. She said they weren't visiting Paris during their trip.
8. She said she was listening to her new CD.
9. She told me John was working in bar for the summer.
10. She told me she wasn't going to go on holiday.
11. She told me he wasn't living in Beijing.
12. She told me she was taking the train to Berlin.
13. She told me he was never coming back.
14. She told me Jill was studying a lot.
15. She told me she wasn't meeting Julie.
16. She said they weren't renting a flat.
17. She said they were were visiting the museum.
18. She said she was eating dinner.
19. She said they weren't going to the library.
20. She said she was coming.

Reported Statements: Past Simple

1. "I went to the cinema yesterday."

She said _____

2. "Jane left the party early."

She told me _____

3. "I didn't go out at the weekend."

She said _____

4. "He didn't like chocolate as a child."

She said _____

5. "They visited Japan."

She said _____

6. "She didn't buy the dress."

He told me _____

7. "I travelled through India and Pakistan."

She told me _____

8. "He met his girlfriend in a café."

She said _____

9. "David didn't arrive until 10 o'clock."

She said _____

10. "We went to the park to have a picnic."

She told me _____

11. "We ate Chinese food, then we walked home."

She told me _____

12. "She forgot to bring the CDs."

He told me _____

13. "I didn't like the food in the restaurant."

She said _____

14. "He didn't take a shower."

She said _____

15. "I worked until six."

She said _____

16. "We went to Paris for the weekend."

She said _____

17. "The plane left at seven."

She said _____

18. "I came to London in 2004."

She said _____

19. "Lucy didn't go to university."

She told me _____

20. "John never studied German."

She said _____

Answers:

1. She said she had been to the cinema yesterday.

2. She told me Jane had left the party early.

3. She said she hadn't gone out at the weekend.

4. She said he hadn't liked chocolate as a child.

5. She said they had visited Japan.

6. He told me she hadn't bought the dress.

7. She told me she had travelled through India and Pakistan.

8. She said he had met his girlfriend in a café.

9. She said David hadn't arrived until 10 o'clock.

10. She told me they had gone to the park to have a picnic.

11. She told me they had eaten Chinese food, then they walked home.

12. He told me she had forgotten to bring the CDs.
13. She said she hadn't liked the food in the restaurant.
14. She said he hadn't taken a shower.
15. She said she had worked until six.
16. She said they had gone to Paris for the weekend.
17. She said the plane had left at seven.
18. She said she had come to London in 2004.
19. She told me Lucy hadn't gone to university.
20. She said John had never studied German.

Reported Statements: Present Perfect
Change the direct speech to reported speech:

1. "I've never been to Brazil."
 She said _____
2. "She has visited Paris three times."
 She said _____
3. "He has read 'War and Peace'."
 She said _____
4. "I haven't seen Julie for ages."
 She said _____
5. "He hasn't been to school this week."
 She said _____
6. "We haven't seen 'The Lord of the Rings'."
 She said _____
7. "They've eaten in a lot of different restaurants."
 She said _____
8. "I've never tried skateboarding."
 She said _____
9. "Lucy has drunk six cups of coffee today."
 She said _____
10. "Mr Black has written three books."
 She said _____
11. "It hasn't rained much this year."
 She said _____
12. "She has never swum in the sea."
 She said _____
13. "He has studied Latin."
 She said _____
14. "I've been sick all week."
 She said _____
15. "Robert has been to China five times."
 She said _____
16. "I haven't met Richard before."
 She said _____

17. "Julie has never studied music."

She said _____

18. "He has eaten too much chocolate."

She said _____

19. "We haven't seen the new play."

She said _____

20. "I haven't tried the new restaurant yet."

She said _____

Answers:

1. She said she'd never been to Brazil.
2. She said she had visited Paris three times.
3. She said he had read 'War and Peace'.
4. She said she hadn't seen Julie for ages.
5. She said he hadn't been to school this week.
6. She said they hadn't seen 'The Lord of the Rings'.
7. She said they'd eaten in a lot of different restaurants.
8. She said she'd never tried skateboarding.
9. She said Lucy had drunk six cups of coffee today.
10. She said Mr Black had written three books.
11. She said it hadn't rained much this year.
12. She said she had never swum in the sea.
13. She said he had studied Latin.
14. She said I'd been sick all week.
15. She said Robert had been to China five times.
16. She said she hadn't met Richard before.
17. She said Julie had never studied music.
18. She said he had eaten too much chocolate.
19. She said we hadn't seen the new play.
20. She said she hadn't tried the new restaurant yet.

Reported Statements: Future Simple

Change the direct speech into reported speech:

1. "I'll go to the cinema later."

She said _____

2. "We'll meet the children at six."

She said _____

3. "She'll be late."

She said _____

4. "Lucy will definitely come."

She said _____

5. "I will stop smoking on Tuesday."

She told us _____

6. "John won't do it."

She said _____

7. "They won't be able to arrive early."

She said _____

8. "I won't come with you."

She said _____

9. "He won't remember to buy milk."

She said _____

10. "It won't rain later I'm sure."

She said _____

11. "The Conservatives will win the next election."

She said _____

12. "That girl will never pass the exam."

She told us _____

13. "John will arrive before David."

She said _____

14. "It will be cold tonight."

She said _____

15. "Jenny will cook dinner."

She said _____

16. "We want to get married next year."

She said _____

17. "I won't be able to afford a new car."

She said _____

18. "She won't want to attend the meeting."

She said _____

19. "Richard won't drink coffee."

She said _____

20. "I won't vote at the next election."

She said _____

Answers:

1. She said she would go to the cinema later.

2. She said they would meet the children at six.

3. She said she would be late.

4. She said Lucy would definitely come.

5. She told us she would stop smoking on Tuesday.

6. She said John wouldn't do it.

7. She said they wouldn't be able to arrive early.

8. She said she wouldn't come with you.

9. She said he wouldn't remember to buy milk.

10. She said it wouldn't rain later she was sure.

11. She said the Conservatives would win the next election.

12. She told us that girl would never pass the exam.

13. She said John would arrive before David.

14. She said it would be cold tonight.

15. She said Jenny would cook dinner.

16. She said they want to get married next year.
17. She said she wouldn't be able to afford a new car.
18. She said she wouldn't want to attend the meeting.
19. She said Richard wouldn't drink coffee.
20. She said she wouldn't vote at the next election.

Reported Yes / No Questions: Present Simple
Change the direct questions into reported questions:

1. Is John at home?
She asked me if _____
2. Am I late?
She asked me if _____
3. Is it cold outside?
She asked me if _____
4. Are they in Paris?
She asked me if _____
5. Is the bus stop near the shopping centre?
She asked me if _____
6. Is the milk fresh?
She asked me if _____
7. Are you a doctor?
She asked me if _____
8. Are James and Lucy from France?
She asked me if _____
9. Is my brother in the garden?
She asked me if _____
10. Is the weather good in Shanghai in the summer?
She asked me if _____
11. Does Julie drink tea?
She asked me if _____
12. Do you like chocolate?
She asked me if _____
13. Do they own a flat?
She asked me if _____
14. Does David go to the cinema often?
She asked me if _____
15. Do the children study Chinese?
She asked me if _____
16. Do they go on holiday every summer?
She asked me if _____
17. Does your sister live in Stockholm?
She asked me if _____
18. Do I talk too much?
She asked me if _____
19. Does Jennifer want a new job?
She asked me if _____

20. Does it rain a lot in London?

She asked me if _____

Answers:

1. She asked me if John was at home.
2. She asked me if she was late.
3. She asked me if it was cold outside.
4. She asked me if they were in Paris.
5. She asked me if the bus stop was near the shopping centre.
6. She asked me if the milk was fresh.
7. She asked me if I was a doctor.
8. She asked me if James and Lucy were from France.
9. She asked me if her brother was in the garden.
10. She asked me if the weather was good in Shanghai in the summer.
11. She asked me if Julie drank tea.
12. She asked me if you liked chocolate.
13. She asked me if they owned a flat.
14. She asked me if David went to the cinema often.
15. She asked me if the children studied Chinese.
16. She asked me if they went on holiday every summer.
17. She asked me if my sister lived in Stockholm.
18. She asked me if she talked too much.
19. She asked me if Jennifer wanted a new job.
20. She asked me if it rained a lot in London.

Reported 'Wh' Questions: Present Simple
Change the direct questions into reported questions:

1. Where is the post office?

She asked me _____

2. Why is Julie sad?

She asked me _____

3. What's for dinner?

She asked me _____

4. Who is the woman in the red dress?

She asked me _____

5. How is your grandmother?

She asked me _____

6. When is the party?

She asked me _____

7. How much is the rent on your flat?

She asked me _____

8. Where are the glasses?

She asked me _____

9. How is the weather in Chicago?

She asked me _____

10. Who is the Prime Minister of Canada?

She asked me _____

11. Where do you usually go swimming?

She asked me _____

12. What does Luke do at the weekend?

She asked me _____

13. Where do your parents live?

She asked me _____

14. Who do you go running with?

She asked me _____

15. When does Lucy get up?

She asked me _____

16. How much TV do you watch?

She asked me _____

17. How many books do they own?

She asked me _____

18. Where does John work?

She asked me _____

19. What do the children study on Fridays?

She asked me _____

20. Why do you study English?

She asked me _____

Answers:

1. She asked me where the post office was.

2. She asked me why Julie was sad.

3. She asked me what was for dinner.

4. She asked me who the woman in the red dress was.

5. She asked me how my grandmother was.

6. She asked me when the party was.

7. She asked me how much the rent on your flat was.

8. She asked me where the glasses were.

9. She asked me how the weather in Chicago was.

10. She asked me who the Prime Minister of Canada was.

11. She asked me where I usually went swimming.

12. She asked me what Luke did at the weekend.

13. She asked me where my parents lived.

14. She asked me who I went running with.

15. She asked me when Lucy got up.

16. She asked me how much TV I watched.

17. She asked me how many books they owned.

18. She asked me where John worked.

19. She asked me what the children studied on Fridays.

20. She asked me why I studied English.

Reported Questions

Change these direct questions into reported speech:

1. "Where is he?"

She asked me _____

2. "What are you doing?"

She asked me _____

3. "Why did you go out last night?"

She asked me _____

4. "Who was that beautiful woman?"

She asked me _____

5. "How is your mother?"

She asked me _____

6. "What are you going to do at the weekend?"

She asked me _____

7. "Where will you live after graduation?"

She asked me _____

8. "What were you doing when I saw you?"

She asked me _____

9. "How was the journey?"

She asked me _____

10. "How often do you go to the cinema?"

She asked me _____

11. "Do you live in London?"

She asked me _____

12. "Did he arrive on time?"

She asked me _____

13. "Have you been to Paris?"

She asked me _____

14. "Can you help me?"

She asked me _____

15. "Are you working tonight?"

She asked me _____

16. "Will you come later?"

She asked me _____

17. "Do you like coffee?"

She asked me _____

18. "Is this the road to the station?"

She asked me _____

19. "Did you do your homework?"

She asked me _____

20. "Have you studied reported speech before?"

She asked me _____

Reported Questions – Answers:

1. She asked me where he was.

2. She asked me what I was doing.
3. She asked me why I went (had gone) out last night.
4. She asked me who that beautiful woman was.
5. She asked me how my mother was.
6. She asked me what I was going to do at the weekend.
7. She asked me where I would live after graduation.
8. She asked me what I had been doing when she saw (had seen) me.
9. She asked me how the journey was (had been).
- 10 She asked me how often I went to the cinema.
- 11 She asked me if I lived in London.
- 12 She asked me if he arrived (had arrived) on time.
- 13 She asked me if I had been to Paris.
- 14 She asked me if I could help her.
- 15 She asked me if I was working tonight (that night).
- 16 She asked me if I would come later.
- 17 She asked me if I liked coffee.
- 18 She asked me if this was the road to the station.
- 19 She asked me if I did (had done) my homework.
- 20 She asked me if I had studied reported speech before.

Reported Requests and Orders

Change the direct speech into reported speech:

1. "Please help me carry this"

She asked me _____

2. "Please come early"

She _____

3. "Please buy some milk"

She _____

4. "Could you please open the window?"

She _____

5. "Could you bring the book tonight?"

She _____

6. "Can you help me with my homework, please?"

She _____

7. "Would you bring me a cup of coffee, please?"

She _____

8. "Would you mind passing the salt?"

She _____

9. "Would you mind lending me a pencil?"

She _____

10. "I was wondering if you could possibly tell me the time?"

She _____

11. "Do your homework!"

She told me _____

12. "Go to bed!"

She _____

13. "Don't be late!"

She _____

14. "Don't smoke!"

She _____

15. "Tidy your room!"

She _____

16. "Wait here!"

She _____

17. "Don't do that!"

She _____

18. "Eat your dinner!"

She _____

19. "Don't make a mess!"

She _____

20. "Do the washing-up!"

She _____

Reported Orders and Requests – Answers:

1. She asked me to help her carry this.
2. She asked me to come early.
3. She asked me to buy some milk.
4. She asked me to open the window.
5. She asked me to bring the book tonight (that night).
6. She asked me to help her with her homework.
7. She asked me to bring her a cup of coffee.
8. She asked me to pass the salt.
9. She asked me to lend her a pencil.
10. She asked me to tell her the time.
11. She told me to do my homework.
12. She told me to go to bed.
13. She told me not to be late.
14. She told me not to smoke.
15. She told me to tidy my room.
16. She told me to wait here (there).
17. She told me not to do that.
18. She told me to eat my dinner.
19. She told me not to make a mess.
20. She told me to do the washing-up.

REPORTED SPEECH: SIMPLE STATEMENTS

Example: Peter: "I cleaned the black shoes yesterday."

Answer: Peter told me that **he had cleaned the black shoes the day before**.

- 1) John: "Mandy is at home."
John said that.....
- 2) Max: "Frank often reads a book."
Max told me that.....
- 3) Susan: "I'm watching TV."
Susan said to me that.....
- 4) Simon: "David was ill."
Simon said that.....
- 5) Peggy: "The girls helped in the house."
Peggy told me that.....
- 6) Richard: "I am going to ride a skateboard."
Richard said to me that.....
- 7) Stephen and Claire: "We have cleaned the windows."
Stephen and Claire told me that.....
- 8) Charles: "I didn't have time to do my homework."
Charles remarked that.....
- 9) Mrs Jones: "My mother will be 50 years old."
Mrs Jones told me that.....
- 10) Jean: "The boss must sign the letter."
Jean said that.....

REPORTED SPEECH: STATEMENTS WITH TIME EXPRESSIONS

Example: Peter: "I cleaned the black shoes yesterday."

Answer: Peter told me that **he had cleaned the black shoes the day before**.

- 1) Emily: "Our teacher will go to Leipzig tomorrow."
Emily said that.....
- 2) Helen: "I was writing a letter yesterday."
Helen told me that.....
- 3) Robert: "My father flew to Dallas last year."
Robert told me that.....
- 4) Lisa: "Tim went to the stadium an hour ago."
Lisa said that.....
- 5) Patricia: "My mother will celebrate her birthday next weekend."
Patricia said that.....
- 6) Michael: "I am going to read a book this week."
Michael said to me that.....
- 7) Jason and Victoria: "We will do our best in the exams tomorrow."
Jason and Victoria told me that.....
- 8) Andrew: "We didn't eat fish two days ago."
Andrew remarked that.....
- 9) Alice: "I spent all my pocket money on Monday."
Alice complained that.....
- 10) David: "John had already gone at six."
David said that

REPORTED SPEECH: QUESTIONS

Example: Peter: "Did John clean the black shoes?"

Answer: Peter asked me **if John had cleaned the black shoes**.

- 1) Christopher: "Do you want to dance?"
Christopher asked me.....
- 2) Betty: "When did you come?"
Betty wanted to know.....
- 3) Mark: "Has John arrived?"
Mark asked me.....
- 4) Ronald: "Where does Maria park her car?"
Ronald asked me.....
- 5) Elisabeth: "Did you watch the latest film?"
Elisabeth asked me.....
- 6) Mandy: "Can I help you?"
Mandy wanted to know.....
- 7) Andrew: "Will Mandy have lunch with Sue?"
Andrew asked me.....
- 8) Justin: "What are you doing?"
Justin asked me.....
- 9) Frank: "How much pocket money does Lisa get?"
Frank wanted to know.....
- 10) Anne: "Must I do the shopping?"
Anne asked.....

REPORTED COMMANDS:

Example: Peter: "Clean the black shoes!"

Answer: Peter told me **to clean the black shoes**.

- 1) Andrew: "Clean the blue bike!"
Andrew told me.....
 - 2) Jessica: "Write a text message!"
Jessica told me.....
 - 3) Nelly: "Help Peter's sister!"
Nelly told me.....
 - 4) Fred: "Wash your hands!"
Fred told me.....
 - 5) Anna: "Open the window!"
Anna told me.....
-
- 1) Karen: "Don't play football in the garden!"
Karen told me.....
 - 2) Teacher: "Don't forget your homework!"
The teacher reminded me.....
 - 3) Mike: "Don't shout at Peter!"
Mike told me.....
 - 4) Yvonne: "Don't talk to your neighbour!"
Yvonne told me.....
 - 5) Denise: "Don't open the door!"
Denise told me.....

SIMPLE STATEMENTS. ANSWERS:

- 1) John: "Mandy is at home."
John said that **Mandy was at home.**
- 2) Max: "Frank often reads a book."
Max told me that **Frank often read a book.**
- 3) Susan: "I'm watching TV."
Susan said to me that **she was watching TV.**
- 4) Simon: "David was ill."
Simon said that **David had been ill.**
- 5) Peggy: "The girls helped in the house."
Peggy told me that **the girls had helped in the house.**
- 6) Richard: "I am going to ride a skateboard."
Richard said to me that **he was going to ride a skateboard.**
- 7) Stephen and Claire: "We have cleaned the windows."
Stephen and Claire told me that **they had cleaned the windows.**
- 8) Charles: "I didn't have time to do my homework."
Charles remarked that **he hadn't had time to do his homework.**
- 9) Mrs Jones: "My mother will be 50 years old."
Mrs Jones told me that **her mother would be 50 years old.**
- 10) Jean: "The boss must sign the letter."
Jean said that **the boss had to sign the letter.**

STATEMENTS WITH TIME EXPRESSIONS. ANSWERS:

- 1) Emily: "Our teacher will go to Leipzig tomorrow."
Emily said that **their teacher would go to Leipzig the next day.**
- 2) Helen: "I was writing a letter yesterday."
Helen told me that **she had been writing a letter the day before.**
- 3) Robert: "My father flew to Dallas last year."
Robert told me that **his father had flown to Dallas the year before.**
- 4) Lisa: "Tim went to the stadium an hour ago."
Lisa said that **Tim had gone to the stadium an hour before.**
- 5) Patricia: "My mother will celebrate her birthday next weekend."
Patricia said that **her mother would celebrate her birthday the following weekend.**
- 6) Michael: "I am going to read a book this week."
Michael said to me that **he was going to read a book that week.**
- 7) Jason and Victoria: "We will do our best in the exams tomorrow."
Jason and Victoria told me that **they would do their best in the exams the next day.**
- 8) Andrew: "We didn't eat fish two days ago."
Andrew remarked that **they hadn't eaten fish two days before.**
- 9) Alice: "I spent all my pocket money on Monday."
Alice complained that **she had spent all her pocket money on Monday.**
- 10) David: "John had already gone at six."
David said that **John had already gone at six.**

REPORTED QUESTIONS. ANSWERS:

- 1) Christopher: "Do you want to dance?"
Christopher asked me **if I wanted to dance**.
- 2) Betty: "When did you come?"
Betty wanted to know **when I had come**.
- 3) Mark: "Has John arrived?"
Mark asked me **if John had arrived**.
- 4) Ronald: "Where does Maria park her car?"
Ronald asked me **where Maria parked her car**.
- 5) Elisabeth: "Did you watch the latest film?"
Elisabeth asked me **if I had watched the latest film**.
- 6) Mandy: "Can I help you?"
Mandy wanted to know **if she could help me**.
- 7) Andrew: "Will Mandy have lunch with Sue?"
Andrew asked me **if Mandy would have lunch with Sue**.
- 8) Justin: "What are you doing?"
Justin asked me **what I was doing**.
- 9) Frank: "How much pocket money does Lisa get?"
Frank wanted to know **how much pocket money Lisa got**.
- 10) Anne: "Must I do the shopping?"
Anne asked **if she had to do the shopping**.

REPORTED COMMANDS. ANSWERS:

- 1) Andrew: "Clean the blue bike!"
Andrew told me **to clean the blue bike**.
 - 2) Jessica: "Write a text message!"
Jessica told me **to write a text message**.
 - 3) Nelly: "Help Peter's sister!"
Nelly told me **to help Peter's sister**.
 - 4) Fred: "Wash your hands!"
Fred told me **to wash my hands**.
 - 5) Anna: "Open the window!"
Anna told me **to open the window**.
-
- 1) Karen: "Don't play football in the garden!"
Karen told me **not to play football in the garden**.
 - 2) Teacher: "Don't forget your homework!"
The teacher reminded me **not to forget my homework**.
 - 3) Mike: "Don't shout at Peter!"
Mike told me **not to shout at Peter**.
 - 4) Yvonne: "Don't talk to your neighbour!"
Yvonne told me **not to talk to my neighbour**.
 - 5) Denise: "Don't open the door!"
Denise told me **not to open the door**.

43 So/Neither do I and I think so

1 So and neither

- Vicky: *I'm hungry.*
 Rachel: **So am I.** *I haven't eaten anything all day.*
 Daniel: **Neither have I.** *I didn't have time for breakfast.*

We use **so** after a positive statement and **neither** after a negative one.

I'm hungry. ~ **So am I.** (= And I'm hungry./I'm hungry, too.)

I haven't eaten. ~ **Neither have I.** (= And I haven't eaten./I haven't eaten either.)

The structure is **so/neither** + an auxiliary + the subject.

The auxiliary is a form of **be** or **have** or a modal verb, e.g. **can**.

We're really busy at work. ~ **So are we.**

Tom has gone to the match. ~ **And so has Nick.**

David can't drive, and neither can Melanie.

The subject comes at the end. NOT *We're busy.* ~ ~~So we are.~~

In the Present Simple and Past Simple we use a form of **do**.

I love old cowboy films. ~ **So do I.** *This phone doesn't work.* ~ **Neither does this one.**

United won, and so did Rangers.

We can use **nor** instead of **neither**.

Emma isn't here tonight. Neither/Nor is Matthew.

2 I think so, etc.

- Vicky: *It's 'Round the Corner' at half past seven, my favourite soap opera. Are we going to be back in time?*
 Daniel: **I think so.** *We haven't got far to go now.*
 Rachel: *We might miss the beginning.*
 Vicky: **Oh, I hope not.** *I want to know if Bernard really did steal the money.*



Here **I think so** means 'I think we'll be back in time', and **I hope not** means 'I hope we don't miss the beginning'.

We can use **so** after **be afraid**, **believe**, **expect**, **guess**, **hope**, **suppose** and **think**.

Do you think you'll get the job? ~ *Well, I hope so.*

Are you going on holiday this year? ~ *Yes, I expect so.*

I don't know for sure if Henry is rich, but I should think so.

But we cannot use **so** after **know** or **be sure**.

There's been an accident. ~ *Yes, I know.* NOT ~~I know so.~~

Are you sure you're doing the right thing? ~ *Yes, I'm sure.* NOT ~~I'm sure so.~~

There are two negative structures.

NEGATIVE + **so**

Is it raining? ~ **I don't think so.**

Are you going to the concert? ~ **I don't expect so.**

With **expect** and **think**, we normally use the negative and **so**.

POSITIVE + **not**

Is it raining? ~ **I hope not.**

Have we won a prize? ~ **I'm afraid not.**

With **be afraid**, **guess** and **hope**, we use the positive and **not**.

We can use **believe** and **suppose** in either structure.

Will there be any seats left? ~ **I don't suppose so.** OR **I suppose not.**



'So' and 'Neither' Exercise 1

You're having a conversation with Jenny. What she says is true for you too. Put in 'so --- I' or 'neither --- I', choosing which auxiliary verb you need:

1. Jenny: Sarah loves chocolate. Me: _____
2. Jenny: I can't play the piano. Me: _____
3. Jenny: Catherine is English. Me: _____
4. Jenny: She isn't coming to the party. Me: _____
5. Jenny: Lucy will come early tomorrow. Me: _____
6. Jenny: I have to study this weekend. Me: _____
7. Jenny: Dan lives in Madrid. Me: _____
8. Jenny: She doesn't have any brothers or sisters. Me: _____
9. Jenny: I've been to Mexico. Me: _____
10. Jenny: I'm going home now. Me: _____
11. Jenny: I didn't pass the exam. Me: _____
12. Jenny: She hasn't brought her laptop. Me: _____
13. Jenny: David is living in Mumbai. Me: _____
14. Jenny: I won't have a cake just now. Me: _____
15. Jenny: I'm not an engineer. Me: _____
16. Jenny: John went to the lecture yesterday. Me: _____
17. Jenny: I'm studying Spanish at the moment. Me: _____
18. Jenny: I'd like a cup of coffee. Me: _____
19. Jenny: John wouldn't drive in the snow. Me: _____
20. Jenny: Emma can speak French. Me: _____

Answers:

- | | |
|---|----------------------|
| 1. Jenny: Sarah loves chocolate. | Me: So do I. |
| 2. Jenny: I can't play the piano. | Me: Neither can I. |
| 3. Jenny: Catherine is English. | Me: So am I. |
| 4. Jenny: She isn't coming to the party. | Me: Neither am I. |
| 5. Jenny: Lucy will come early tomorrow. | Me: So will I. |
| 6. Jenny: I have to study this weekend. | Me: So do I. |
| 7. Jenny: Dan lives in Madrid. | Me: So do I. |
| 8. Jenny: She doesn't have any brothers or sisters. | Me: Neither do I. |
| 9. Jenny: I've been to Mexico. | Me: So have I. |
| 10. Jenny: I'm going home now. | Me: So am I. |
| 11. Jenny: I didn't pass the exam. | Me: Neither did I. |
| 12. Jenny: She hasn't brought her laptop. | Me: Neither have I. |
| 13. Jenny: David is living in Mumbai. | Me: So am I. |
| 14. Jenny: I won't have a cake just now. | Me: Neither will I. |
| 15. Jenny: I'm not an engineer. | Me: Neither am I. |
| 16. Jenny: John went to the lecture yesterday. | Me: So did I. |
| 17. Jenny: I'm studying Spanish at the moment. | Me: So am I. |
| 18. Jenny: I'd like a cup of coffee. | Me: So would I. |
| 19. Jenny: John wouldn't drive in the snow. | Me: Neither would I. |
| 20. Jenny: Emma can speak French. | Me: So can I. |

Agreeing and Disagreeing Exercise

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1 Teacher: I'm tired.
Students:</p> <p>A Neither is we
B So are we
C So are you
D So am I</p> | <p>6 Billy: I hate tomatoes.
Lilly:</p> <p>A So do I
B I do them to
C I do
D Neither do I</p> |
| <p>2 Maggie: I love rice.
Normy: Yuk.</p> <p>A I do
B I don't
C So do I
D Neither do I</p> | <p>7 Sally: I love chocolate.
Polly:</p> <p>A So love me
B So do I
C I love too
D I do</p> |
| <p>3 Elly: I'd like to visit The Greek Islands.
Robby:</p> <p>A So had I
B So would I
C Neither would I
D Neither had I</p> | <p>8 Tommy: I don't like pears.
Sally:</p> <p>A Neither can I
B I don't
C I do
D So do I</p> |
| <p>4 Polly: I went to the cinema on Saturday.
Pammy: What a coincidence.
.....</p> <p>A So was I
B So do I
C So did I
D So went I</p> | <p>9 Polly: My Mum can't stand techno music.
Sally: mine.</p> <p>A So are
B Neither can
C Neither do
D So can</p> |
| <p>5 Mary: I'm not going out tonight.
Shelly:</p> <p>A So do I
B I'm not
C Neither am I
D So am I</p> | <p>10 Johny: I've never been to Granada.
Sally:</p> <p>A So have I
B So I haven't
C Neither have I
D Neither had I</p> |

Answers

1B 2B 3B 4C 5C 6A 7B 8C 9B 10C



Prepositions: Definition and Usage

A **preposition** may be defined as **connecting word showing the relation of a noun or a noun substitute to some other word** in the sentence (*the squirrel **in** the tree*).

Over ninety percent of preposition usage involves these nine prepositions:

with	at	by
to	in	for
from	of	on

Prepositions cause problems because sometimes they can be used interchangeably (He sat on the chair: He sat in the chair), because prepositions are often combined with verbs to create phrasal verbs (to look after someone; to look down on someone), and because a single preposition can be used to express several different ideas (He is tall for his age; I swam for an hour).

Uses of Common Prepositions

Prepositions are used to express a number of relationships, including time, location, manner, means, quantity, purpose, and state or condition. The following outline demonstrates the uses of common prepositions.

Three Groups of Prepositions:

- Prepositions of place, position and direction.
- Prepositions of time.
- Prepositions for other relationships.

SOME COMMON PREPOSITIONS				
PLACE	POSITION	DIRECTION	TIME	OTHER
above across along among at away from behind below beside between	beyond by down from in in front of inside into near off	on opposite out (of) outside over around through to towards under up	after before at by for during from in	except as like about with without by for

Although prepositions are hard to generalize with separate rules, there is one simple rule about them. And, unlike most rules, this rule has no exceptions.

Rule: They are always followed by a "noun", never followed by a verb.
By "noun" we include:

Noun (dog, money, love) / **Proper Noun (name)** (London, Mary) /
Pronoun (you, him, us) / **Noun Group** (my first car) / **Gerund** (swimming)

A. TIME

about:	about noon (approximately)
after:	after the game after lunch after three
at:	at five o'clock at last (finally)
by:	by midnight (no later than)
for:	for an hour (duration)
from:	from Monday to Friday
in:	in the morning in summer/ in 1987 in six months (at the end of)
on:	on Tuesday (day of the week) on May 8 (date) on time (punctual)
past:	a quarter past three
to:	a quarter to three



B. PLACE OR DIRECTION

around:	She walked around the car.
at:	They are at home. We were at the restaurant.
down:	They lived down the street.
from:	We immigrated from Peru in 91. The house is 1 mile from here.
in:	He lives in a trailer.
inside:	Put it inside the box.
of:	We moved south of Montreal.
on:	We sat on the chair.
through:	They drove through the tunnel.
to:	He went to Prague.
up:	He walked up the stairs.

C. MEANS, COMPANY OR AGENT

by:	He was hit by a ball. She came by train. He did it by hard work. It came by special delivery.
with:	He chased the dog with a stick. He went with me. He ate it with a fork.

D. MANNER

by:	By doing it yourself, you save time.
in:	He left in confusion.
on:	I swear it on my word of honor.

E. STATE OR CONDITION

by:	They are by themselves (alone).
in:	He is in a state of confusion.
on:	He is on duty.
for:	I mistook you for someone else.

F. QUANTITY OR MEASURE

for:	We drove for twenty miles. We bought it for ten cents.
by:	We bought them by the kilo.

G. PURPOSE

for:	He bought it for an emergency. She went to the city for sightseeing.
-------------	---



Uses of Prepositions after Certain Verbs

account for	
agree on (something)	
agree with (someone)	
apologize to	
apply for	listen for
approve of	listen to
argue with (someone)	look at
ask for	look for
believe in	look forward to
belong to	object to
blame (someone) for (something)	plan on
blame (something) on (someone)	provide for
borrow from	provide with
call on (upon)	recover from
care for	remind (someone) of
compliment (someone) on	search for
come from	see about
consent to	substitute for
consist of	talk about
convince (someone) of (something)	talk of
decide on (upon)	telephone to
depend on (upon)	think about
get rid of	think of
hear about	wait for
hear from	wait on (meaning serve)
hear of	
insist on (upon)	
invite (someone) to	
laugh at	

Uses of Prepositions with Certain Adjectives and in Idiomatic Expressions

according to	
accustomed to	
angry about (something)	angry at (someone)
capable of	angry with (someone)
composed of	based on
content with	independent of
dependent on (upon)	in regard to
different from (than)	interested in
disappointed in	limited to
due to	married to
followed by	proud of
fond of	related to
have respect for	resulting from
in accordance with	similar to
	tired of

Fill in the correct prepositions

about – at – by - for – from – in – of – on – to - with

1. She learned Russian _____ the age of 45.
2. The book was written _____ Mark Twain.
3. I'll show you the picture _____ the palace.
4. We can only get to the camp _____ foot.
5. He reminds me _____ his old history teacher.
6. What are you talking _____ ?
7. _____ the end of next year we will have made over £ 100,000.
8. She always gets up early _____ the morning and goes to bed late _____ night.
9. I went to work _____ Tuesday but I didn't go _____ Friday.
10. You'll have to wait. He'll be with you _____ a minute.
11. Philip waited _____ her at the movie theatre.
12. He started learning English _____ 2005.
13. You have to pay _____ the tickets on the day you order them.
14. We are very proud _____ this company.
15. It's very kind _____ you to help us.
16. The old man suffered _____ a heart attack.
17. Please write _____ pencil.
18. It's _____ time you told him the truth.
19. The manager didn't take part _____ the discussion.
20. He's very good _____ telling jokes.
21. I'll see you _____ the conference
22. We sat down _____ the grass and ate our lunch.
23. My parents got married _____ the 1970s.
24. There's a good restaurant _____ the end of the street.
25. We usually have turkey _____ Thanksgiving.
26. I would like to travel _____ Italy next summer.
27. I took a plane _____ Munich to Rome.
28. I'd like to speak _____ the manager please.
29. I don't usually feel tired _____ the morning.
30. My mother is abroad so my dad is taking care _____ us _____ the moment.
31. Sonja gets _____ the seven o'clock bus in the morning.
32. She always looks _____ herself in the mirror.
33. I met Donna _____ a party _____ Friday night.
34. My friend always borrows money _____ me.
35. Daria's books are lying _____ the floor.
36. He arrived at the school building just _____ time.
37. The audience threw tomatoes _____ him.
38. Passengers are not allowed to use cell phones _____ airplanes.
39. He is responsible _____ what he does.
40. I'm sorry _____ the job you didn't get.
41. I'm very bad _____ mathematics.
42. We had to climb slowly _____ the hill.
43. He is always _____ time.
44. How many people are _____ your team?
45. A university is where you study _____ a degree.
46. Her next birthday will be _____ a Sunday.
47. The new factory is expected to go online _____ May.
48. Many of us eat _____ fork and spoon.
49. We have been searching _____ a web designer for a few weeks now.
50. The TV is _____ the corner of the room.

Fill in the correct prepositions

about – at – by – for – from – in – of – on – to – with

1. She learned Russian **at** the age of 45.
2. The book was written **by** Mark Twain.
3. I'll show you the picture **of** the palace.
4. We can only get to the camp **on** foot.
5. He reminds me **of** his old history teacher.
6. What are you talking **about**?
7. **By** the end of next year we will have made over £ 100,000.
8. She always gets up early **in** the morning and goes to bed late **at** night.
9. I went to work **on** Tuesday but I didn't go **on** Friday.
10. You'll have to wait. He'll be with you **in** a minute.
11. Philip waited **for** her at the movie theatre.
12. He started learning English **in** 2005.
13. You have to pay **for** the tickets on the day you order them.
14. We are very proud **of** this company.
15. It's very kind **of** you to help us.
16. The old man suffered **from** a heart attack.
17. Please write **in** pencil.
18. It's **about** time you told him the truth.
19. The manager didn't take part **in** the discussion.
20. He's very good **at** telling jokes.
21. I'll see you **at** the conference
22. We sat down **on** the grass and ate our lunch.
23. My parents got married **in** the 1970s.
24. There's a good restaurant **at** the end of the street.
25. We usually have turkey **for** Thanksgiving.
26. I would like to travel **to** Italy next summer.
27. I took a plane **from** Munich to Rome.
28. I'd like to speak **with** the manager please.
29. I don't usually feel tired **in** the morning.
30. My mother is abroad so my dad is taking care **of** us **at** the moment.
31. Sonja gets **on** the seven o'clock bus in the morning.
32. She always looks **at** herself in the mirror.
33. I met Donna **at** a party **on** Friday night.
34. My friend always borrows money **from** me.
35. Daria's books are lying **on** the floor.
36. He arrived at the school building just **in** time.
37. The audience threw tomatoes **at** him.
38. Passengers are not allowed to use cell phones **on** airplanes.
39. He is responsible **for** what he does.
40. I'm sorry **about** the job you didn't get.
41. I'm very bad **at** mathematics.
42. We had to climb slowly **up** the hill.
43. He is always **on** time.
44. How many people are **on** your team?
45. A university is where you study **for** a degree.
46. Her next birthday will be **on** a Sunday.
47. The new factory is expected to go online **in** May.
48. Many of us eat **with** fork and spoon.
49. We have been searching **for** a web designer for a few weeks now.
50. The TV is **in** the corner of the room.

Fill in the correct prepositions

**across - at – by - during - for - from - in – into – of - on –
through - to – towards – with -**

1. Halloween is celebrated _____ the United States _____ October 31.
2. Are you going away for the weekend? – I don't know. It depends _____ the weather.
3. Don't kiss the prince. He might turn _____ a frog.
4. He felt bad _____ no reason at all.
5. I have been living here _____ ten years.
6. Have you been _____ the cinema recently? Yes I was there a few days ago.
7. I happened to meet an old friend _____ town.
8. Have you read the article? – It was _____ yesterday's newspapers.
9. He always drives _____ a tremendous speed because he's always _____ a hurry.
10. He is very fond _____ good food.
11. He married _____ the age of 28.
12. I bought many things _____ my stay in New York.
13. According _____ the guide there are three hotels _____ town.
14. I saw him standing _____ the queue but I don't know if he got _____ the bus.
15. I want to post this letter _____ a friend.
16. I'm going _____ Glasgow on Monday. Would you like to come with us?
17. John has got a very strange taste _____ clothes.
18. Mum sat _____ the back of the car.
19. I'm interested _____ basketball but I'm not very good _____ playing it.
20. I'm returning _____ Spain _____ the end of the month.
21. My parents met _____ the war, in 1943.
22. Is it true that your mother died _____ cancer.
23. It was embarrassing. I didn't have enough money _____ pay for the meal.
24. It was _____ the radio yesterday morning.
25. It's a quick journey _____ Manchester _____ Leeds.
26. Jane goes to the office early _____ Tuesdays.
27. I saw him sometime _____ June.
28. Meet me _____ the station.
29. The lights are moving _____ us.
30. My country is famous _____ great musicians.
31. Who is that girl over there _____ the red dress?
32. I live _____ Sweden but every summer I travel _____ Spain for my holidays.
33. Turn right _____ the end of the street and then it will be right in front of you
34. My sister has a beautiful apartment. She lives _____ the third floor.
35. Please sit down. Mr. Brown will be _____ you in a moment.
36. I have to apologize _____ being late.
37. She tried to prevent the children _____ jumping into the water.
38. Sometimes I have to walk to work and sometimes I go _____ bus.
39. Thank you _____ coming to visit us.
40. The boys met _____ the corner of the street.
41. The smallest room is located _____ the left of the hall.
42. We entered the building _____ entrance number 3.
43. There was a dark spot _____ the ceiling.
44. We arrived just _____ time to see the Queen.
45. We have to be at the airport _____ 6 p.m.
46. We ran _____ the doctor on our way to the bookshop.

Fill in the correct prepositions

across - at – by - during - for - from - in – into – of - on –
through - to – towards – with -

1. Halloween is celebrated **in** the United States **on** October 31.
2. Are you going away for the weekend? – I don't know. It depends **on** the weather.
3. Don't kiss the prince. He might turn **into** a frog.
4. He felt bad **for** no reason at all.
5. I have been living here **for** ten years.
6. Have you been **to** the cinema recently? Yes I was there a few days ago.
7. I happened to meet an old friend **in** town.
8. Have you read the article? – It was **in** yesterday's newspapers.
9. He always drives **at** a tremendous speed because he's always **in** a hurry.
10. He is very fond **of** good food.
11. He married **at** the age of 28.
12. I bought many things **during** my stay in New York.
13. According **to** the guide there are three hotels **in** town.
14. I saw him standing **in** the queue but I don't know if he got **on** the bus.
15. I want to post this letter **to** a friend.
16. I'm going **to** Glasgow on Monday. Would you like to come with us?
17. John has got a very strange taste **of** clothes.
18. Mum sat **in** the back of the car.
19. I'm interested **in** basketball but I'm not very good **at** playing it.
20. I'm returning **to** Spain **at** the end of the month.
21. My parents met **during** the war, in 1943.
22. Is it true that your mother died **of** cancer.
23. It was embarrassing. I didn't have enough money **to** pay for the meal.
24. It was **on** the radio yesterday morning.
25. It's a quick journey **from** Manchester **to** Leeds.
26. Jane goes to the office early **on** Tuesdays.
27. I saw him sometime **in** June.
28. Meet me **at** the station.
29. The lights are moving **towards** us.
30. My country is famous **for** great musicians.
31. Who is that girl over there **in** the red dress?
32. I live **in** Sweden but every summer I travel **to** Spain for my holidays.
33. Turn right **at** the end of the street and then it will be right in front of you
34. My sister has a beautiful apartment. She lives **on** the third floor.
35. Please sit down. Mr. Brown will be **with** you in a moment.
36. I have to apologize **for** being late.
37. She tried to prevent the children **from** jumping into the water.
38. Sometimes I have to walk to work and sometimes I go **by** bus.
39. Thank you **for** coming to visit us.
40. The boys met **at** the corner of the street.
41. The smallest room is located **to** the left of the hall.
42. We entered the building **through** entrance number 3.
43. There was a dark spot **on** the ceiling.
44. We arrived just **in** time to see the Queen.
45. We have to be at the airport **by**, **at** 6 p.m.
46. We ran **across** the doctor on our way to the bookshop.

Fill in the correct prepositions!

**above – about – according - after – around - at –
beside – between - by - down – for - from - in – of -
on - throughout - to – with -**

1. The two friends went _____ the movies by themselves.
2. During the summer I stayed _____ my grandparents.
3. I'll wait for you _____ the bus stop.
4. The milk is _____ the refrigerator next to the orange juice.
5. She came and sat _____ her husband.
6. _____ we saw the television show on bears we drove to the zoo.
7. _____ the day, the rain came into the window.
8. The phone rang _____ the middle of the night.
9. Some boys were crawling _____ under the car.
10. His notebook fell _____ the floor.
11. The plane flew _____ the clouds.
12. Peter doesn't go to work _____ Fridays.
13. Open your book _____ page 9.
14. Can you see a yellow house _____ the left?
15. There was a picture _____ the wall _____ the bed.
16. All the latest computers will be shown _____ the exhibition.
17. He came to see how I was getting _____.
18. I am very interested _____ documentaries on TV.
19. I am surprised _____ how much money they want to pay him.
20. Nobody in the family has heard _____ the accident.
21. She comes _____ a poor family.
22. I am quite good _____ art.
23. Jack came rushing _____ the stairs.
24. Turn right _____ the next traffic lights.
25. Her mother is looking forward _____ going to Australia.
26. The film is based _____ a novel by John Grisham.
27. John is totally obsessed _____ football. He thinks of nothing else.
28. I prefer coffee _____ tea.
29. Let's divide this money _____ us.
30. I like travelling _____ boat in summer.
31. When I was younger I was always afraid _____ going to the dentist.
32. Mary's in the kitchen looking _____ her car keys.
33. Are you really happy _____ your life here?
34. He was quite pleased _____ the results.
35. This is a painting _____ an unknown artist.
36. I am proud _____ being a teacher.
37. Don't worry _____ it. Everything will be fine.
38. My father tells us fascinating stories _____ his years in the navy.
39. Did you call attention _____ their mistake?
40. _____ to the headmaster, both of the boys got involved in the fight.
41. Except _____ that one, all the sentences were easy.
42. Be careful. They will lose faith _____ you.
43. The girls worked _____ their lessons for half an hour.
44. He depends _____ his sister for help.
45. Miss Wilson is very fond _____ French food.

Fill in the correct prepositions!

above – about – according - after – around - at –
beside – between - by - down – for - from - in – of -
on - throughout - to – with -

1. The two friends went **to** the movies by themselves.
2. During the summer I stayed **with** my grandparents.
3. I'll wait for you **at** the bus stop.
4. The milk is **in** the refrigerator next to the orange juice.
5. She came and sat **beside** her husband.
6. **After** we saw the television show on bears we drove to the zoo.
7. **Throughout** the day, the rain came into the window.
8. The phone rang **in** the middle of the night.
9. Some boys were crawling **around** under the car.
10. His notebook fell **on** the floor.
11. The plane flew **above** the clouds.
12. Peter doesn't go to work **on** Fridays.
13. Open your book **on** page 9.
14. Can you see a yellow house **on** the left?
15. There was a picture **on** the wall **above** the bed.
16. All the latest computers will be shown **at** the exhibition.
17. He came to see how I was getting **on**.
18. I am very interested **in** documentaries on TV.
19. I am surprised **at** how much money they want to pay him.
20. Nobody in the family has heard **about** the accident.
21. She comes **from** a poor family.
22. I am quite good **at** art.
23. Jack came rushing **down** the stairs.
24. Turn right **at** the next traffic lights.
25. Her mother is looking forward **to** going to Australia.
26. The film is based **on** a novel by John Grisham.
27. John is totally obsessed **with** football. He thinks of nothing else.
28. I prefer coffee **to** tea.
29. Let's divide this money **between** us.
30. I like travelling **by** boat in summer.
31. When I was younger I was always afraid **of** going to the dentist.
32. Mary's in the kitchen looking **for** her car keys.
33. Are you really happy **with** your life here?
34. He was quite pleased **with** the results.
35. This is a painting **by** an unknown artist.
36. I am proud **of** being a teacher.
37. Don't worry **about** it. Everything will be fine.
38. My father tells us fascinating stories **about** his years in the navy.
39. Did you call attention **to** their mistake?
40. **According** to the headmaster, both of the boys got involved in the fight.
41. Except **for** that one, all the sentences were easy.
42. Be careful. They will lose faith **in** you.
43. The girls worked **on** their lessons for half an hour.
44. He depends **on** his sister for help.
45. Miss Wilson is very fond **of** French food.

Fill in the correct prepositions!

**at - above - about - after - before - behind - by -
down - during - for - from - in - in front of - of - on -
out of - over - to - with**

1. There were _____ a thousand people at the concert.
2. You must be _____ 18 in order to see the film.
3. We are travelling _____ the road.
4. He is suffering _____ an unknown illness.
5. I listened to the game _____ the radio.
6. How are you getting _____ at school?
7. Don't be impatient _____ us. We are trying!
8. Could I speak _____ Tom please?
9. We didn't see the whole performance because we left _____ the last act.
10. There were some beautiful pictures _____ the walls.
11. The march started in the park. _____ there we moved to City Hall.
12. Pessimism is bad _____ your health
13. He asked his mother _____ money.
14. I bought many things _____ my stay in New York.
15. My country is famous _____ historical sights.
16. I'm not _____ a hurry. I can wait.
17. Have you ever been _____ the theatre recently?
18. We arrived _____ the airport _____ time for the plane.
19. My grandfather died _____ cancer.
20. The resort lies about 1,500 meters _____ sea level.
21. His hands are _____ his face.
22. there's a chair _____ my desk
23. The thief jumped _____ the window.
24. Both o my neighbors can take care _____ the cat while you are gone.
25. I rarely think _____ the weather.
26. They were always arguing _____ silly things.
27. _____ first I found the work very tiring but _____ a few weeks I got used to it.
28. My house is _____ the end of the road.
29. The article was _____ yesterday's papers.
30. The classroom is _____ the fourth floor.
31. I applied _____ a few jobs last week, but nobody wrote back.
32. He wants two seats _____ the concert on Friday night.
33. You ought to be ashamed _____ yourself _____ coming in with dirty boots.
34. There's no point _____ going _____ car if we can't park near the theatre.
35. he started his training _____ November
36. Whom did they vote _____ ?
37. The bus stopped _____ the corner of High Street and congress Avenue.
38. I love listening _____ classical music.
39. He is _____ Dallas, Texas but he was born in California.
40. She goes _____ church every Sunday.
41. It's 7 a.m. We need to leave _____ work at once or else we'll miss the bus.
42. I asked the policeman _____ some information.
43. The great player hit the ball _____ the net.
44. Can you find our holiday beach _____ the map?
45. Please turn _____ the volume of the radio. I'm getting deaf.

Fill in the correct prepositions!

at - above - about - after - before - behind - by -
 down - during - for - from - in - in front of - of - on -
 out of - over - to - with

1. There were **over** a thousand people at the concert.
2. You must be **over** 18 in order to see the film.
3. We are travelling **on** the road.
4. He is suffering **from** an unknown illness.
5. I listened to the game **on** the radio.
6. How are you getting **on** at school?
7. Don't be impatient **with** us. We are trying!
8. Could I speak **to** Tom please?
9. We didn't see the whole performance because we left **before** the last act.
10. There were some beautiful pictures **on** the walls.
11. The march started in the park. **From** there we moved to City Hall.
12. Pessimism is bad **for** your health
13. He asked his mother **for** money.
14. I bought many things **during** my stay in New York.
15. My country is famous **for** historical sights.
16. I'm not **in** a hurry. I can wait.
17. Have you ever been **to** the theatre recently?
18. We arrived **at** the airport **in** time for the plane.
19. My grandfather died **of** cancer.
20. The resort lies about 1,500 meters **above** sea level.
21. His hands are **in front of** his face.
22. there's a chair **behind** my desk
23. The thief jumped **out of** the window.
24. Both o my neighbors can take care **of** the cat while you are gone.
25. I rarely think **about** the weather.
26. They were always arguing **about** silly things.
27. **At** first I found the work very tiring but **after** a few weeks I got used to it.
28. My house is **at** the end of the road.
29. The article was **in** yesterday's papers.
30. The classroom is **on** the fourth floor.
31. I applied **for** a few jobs last week, but nobody wrote back.
32. He wants two seats **for** the concert on Friday night.
33. You ought to be ashamed **of** yourself **for** coming in with dirty boots.
34. There's no point **in** going **by** car if we can't park near the theatre.
35. he started his training **in** November
36. Whom did they vote **for**?
37. The bus stopped **at** the corner of High Street and congress Avenue.
38. I love listening **to** classical music.
39. He is **from** Dallas, Texas but he was born in California.
40. She goes **to** church every Sunday.
41. It's 7 a.m. We need to leave **for** work at once or else we'll miss the bus.
42. I asked the policeman **for** some information.
43. The great player hit the ball **over** the net.
44. Can you find our holiday beach **on** the map?
45. Please turn **down** the volume of the radio. I'm getting deaf.

Fill in the blanks with the correct phrases of the preposition ON !

on television	on a diet	on the whole	on an expedition
on the phone	on sale	on the outskirts	on your way
on purpose	on occasions	on average	on fire
on strike	on loan	on the increase	on a trip
on foot	on board	on guard	on a cruise

- The owner of the hotel is a qualified chef, but he rarely cooks himself nowadays. However, _____ he helps the head chef in the kitchen if the restaurant is busy.
- I do have a few suggestions that should improve your presentation, but _____ I think it was an excellent speech.
- We went _____ to Paris for a day on the train and saw the Eiffel Tower and Notre Dame Cathedral.
- She is supposed to be studying for her exam but whenever I go to her room she is _____ chatting to her friends.
- We bought a stereo music center that was _____ because it was in the display window.
- All the roads that led to the town centre were closed because of the flood so it was only possible to reach the main square _____ .
- A human heart beats 72 times per minute _____ .
- At the beginning of the 16th century, _____ of the South American jungles, Balboa became the first European to look at the Pacific Ocean.
- The warders who are _____ at the Tower of London to protect valuable jewels are also known as "Beefeaters".
- The film "JFK" is being shown _____ on Monday night at 9 p.m. on Channel 4.
- 150 passengers _____ an Alpine train in Kaprun died when the train caught fire inside a tunnel.
- While we were _____ our ship anchored at Istanbul, where we visited the Grand Bazaar and Topkapi Palace.
- Barcelona's centre is a maze of narrow streets and medieval buildings, in contrast to the modern apartment buildings _____ of the city.
- I am afraid the book "*Little House of the Prairie*" is _____ from the library at the moment. Would you like to reserve it?
- Do you pass a newsagent _____ to work? If you do, would you mind picking me up the *Times*?
- I don't think the baby dropped it. I think she threw it to the ground _____ in order to gain our attention.
- How long have you been _____ ? – For three weeks now, but I can't resist eating a little chocolate so I haven't lost much weight yet.
- Two days after the bombing, we could still see the flames from the building _____ .
- In 1984, the British coal miners went _____ for almost a year.
- The number of European and American companies investing in underdeveloped countries is _____ as they take advantage of lower wages.

Fill in the blanks with the correct phrases of the preposition ON !

on television	on a diet	on the whole	on an expedition
on the phone	on sale	on the outskirts	on your way
on purpose	on occasions	on average	on fire
on strike	on loan	on the increase	on a trip
on foot	on board	on guard	on a cruise

- The owner of the hotel is a qualified chef, but he rarely cooks himself nowadays. However, **on occasions** he helps the head chef in the kitchen if the restaurant is busy.
- I do have a few suggestions that should improve your presentation, but **on the whole** I think it was an excellent speech.
- We went **on a trip** to Paris for a day on the train and saw the Eiffel Tower and Notre Dame Cathedral.
- She is supposed to be studying for her exam but whenever I go to her room she is **on the phone** chatting to her friends.
- We bought a stereo music center that was **on sale** because it was in the display window.
- All the roads that led to the town centre were closed because of the flood so it was only possible to reach the main square **on foot**.
- A human heart beats 72 times per minute **on average**.
- At the beginning of the 16th century, **on an expedition** of the South American jungles, Balboa became the first European to look at the Pacific Ocean.
- The warders who are **on guard** at the Tower of London to protect valuable jewels are also known as "Beefeaters".
- The film "JFK" is being shown **on television** on Monday night at 9 p.m. on Channel 4.
- 150 passengers **on board** an Alpine train in Kaprun died when the train caught fire inside a tunnel.
- While we were **on a cruise** our ship anchored at Istanbul, where we visited the Grand Bazaar and Topkapi Palace.
- Barcelona's centre is a maze of narrow streets and medieval buildings, in contrast to the modern apartment buildings **on the outskirts** of the city.
- I am afraid the book "*Little House of the Prairie*" is **on loan** from the library at the moment. Would you like to reserve it?
- Do you pass a newsagent **on your way** to work? If you do, would you mind picking me up the *Times*?
- I don't think the baby dropped it. I think she threw it to the ground **on purpose** in order to gain our attention.
- How long have you been **on a diet**? – For three weeks now, but I can't resist eating a little chocolate so I haven't lost much weight yet.
- Two days after the bombing, we could still see the flames from the building **on fire**.
- In 1984, the British coal miners went **on strike** for almost a year.
- The number of European and American companies investing in underdeveloped countries is **on the increase** as they take advantage of lower wages.

Verbs and Prepositions 1

1. Stop worrying _____ your exam - everything will be fine.
2. I've waited _____ Judy for 30 minutes. I'm going home.
3. Stop talking and concentrate _____ your work.
4. Don't forget to pay _____ the newspaper.
5. He explained the computer program _____ me.
6. I don't know what we'll do at the weekend. It depends _____ the weather.
7. She will arrive _____ Beijing at 3 p.m.
8. I like to listen _____ the radio when I wake up.
9. He borrowed £20 _____ his brother.
10. Who does this coat belong _____?
11. She left without paying _____ the meal.
12. It was so hot, I couldn't concentrate _____ my book.
13. Mothers always worry _____ their children.
14. Please explain the meaning of this word _____ your classmates.
15. I'm fed up with waiting _____ spring.
16. That car belongs _____ my father.
17. She listens _____ opera on the tube.
18. A: Which university will you go to? B: It depends _____ my exam results.
19. A lot of people borrow money _____ the bank.
20. When she arrived _____ the pub, it was already closed.

Answers:

1. Stop worrying about your exam - everything will be fine.
2. I've waited for Judy for 30 minutes. I'm going home.
3. Stop talking and concentrate on your work.
4. Don't forget to pay for the newspaper.
5. He explained the computer program to me.
6. I don't know what we'll do at the weekend. It depends on the weather.
7. She will arrive in Beijing at 3 p.m.
8. I like to listen to the radio when I wake up.
9. He borrowed £20 from his brother.
10. Who does this coat belong to?
11. She left without paying for the meal.
12. It was so hot, I couldn't concentrate on my book.
13. Mothers always worry about their children.
14. Please explain the meaning of this word to your classmates.
15. I'm fed up with waiting for spring.
16. That car belongs to my father.
17. She listens to opera on the tube.
18. A: Which university will you go to? B: It depends on my exam results.
19. A lot of people borrow money from the bank.
20. When she arrived at the pub, it was already closed.

Verbs that need prepositions 1 (exercise 2):

Put in the correct preposition:

1. It's so noisy – I can't concentrate _____ my homework.
2. Don't worry – I'll pay _____ the tickets.
3. The car belongs _____ my father, so I don't think we can use it.
4. I borrowed a pen _____ my classmate.
5. I've been waiting _____ the bus for more than twenty minutes!
6. Julie: "What time shall we eat dinner?"
Gill: "It depends _____ John – we'll eat when he gets home".
7. When we arrived _____ the cinema, the film had already started.
8. Please explain this problem _____ us.
9. She was listening _____ the radio when the doorbell rang.
10. John worries _____ his exam results all the time.
11. My flatmate listens _____ a lot of jazz.
12. David paid _____ the drinks.
13. Who does that house belong _____?
14. Don't worry _____ Gemma, she'll be fine.
15. She borrowed a jumper _____ Julie.
16. Please be quiet – I need to concentrate _____ this book.
17. I want to go to the beach tomorrow but it depends _____ the weather.
18. Who are you waiting _____?
19. When will we arrive _____ Beijing?
20. The policeman explained _____ the children why they should never run across a road.

Answers:

1. on
2. for
3. to
4. from
5. for
6. on
7. at
8. to
9. to
10. about
11. to
12. for
13. to
14. about
15. from
16. on
17. on
18. for
19. in
20. to

Prepositions after adjectives 1

Put in the correct preposition:

1. England is famous _____ its rainy weather.
2. I'm very proud _____ my daughter, she worked very hard.
3. He isn't really interested _____ getting married.
4. Luke is very pleased _____ his exam results.
5. Unfortunately, I'm very bad _____ music.
6. I've been married _____ my husband for 10 years.
7. She's very excited _____ the party.
8. Julie is very different _____ her sister.
9. My niece is afraid _____ dogs.
10. A ball gown is similar _____ an evening dress.
11. What is your town famous _____?
12. It's great you got that job - you should be proud _____ yourself.
13. I'm very excited _____ buying a new computer.
14. That bike is similar _____ yours.
15. She is interested _____ jazz.
16. Are you pleased _____ your new house?
17. Lucy is extremely good _____ languages.
18. Who is James married _____?
19. English cheese is very different _____ French cheese.
20. He isn't afraid _____ anything.

Answers:

1. England is famous for its rainy weather.
2. I'm very proud of my daughter, she worked very hard.
3. He isn't really interested in getting married.
4. Luke is very pleased with his exam results.
5. Unfortunately, I'm very bad at music.
6. I've been married to my husband for 10 years.
7. She's very excited about the party.
8. Julie is very different from her sister.
9. My niece is afraid of dogs.
10. A ball gown is similar to an evening dress.
11. What is your town famous for?
12. It's great you got that job - you should be proud of yourself.
13. I'm very excited about buying a new computer.
14. That bike is similar to yours.
15. She is interested in jazz.
16. Are you pleased with your new house?
17. Lucy is extremely good at languages.
18. Who is James married to?
19. English cheese is very different from French cheese.
20. He isn't afraid of anything.

NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES: SUFFIXES

We can make a lot of adjectives by adding a suffixes to a noun. These are some of the most common ones:

Suffix	Noun	Adjective
-ous	danger	dangerous
	fame	famous
-ful	success	successful
	beauty	beautiful
-ent/-ant	intelligence	intelligent
	importance	important
-y	luck	lucky
	anger	angry

NOTE: **-y** is a common adjective ending, but words ending in **-ty** are often nouns.

Adjective	Noun
difficult	difficulty
safe	safety
secure	security
honest	honesty

COMPLETE THE WORDS:

1. You need a lot of *pat*..... in this job. You won't have much *suc*..... if you get *an*..... easily.
2. With her *int*..... and her *bea*....., she has become one of the most *fam*..... people in the country.
3. It's *dif*..... to be *suc*..... without a lot of *luc*.....
4. It was very cold, so the best part of the climb was *dan*..... and *pai*....., but we finally reached the *saf*..... of our camp.
5. *Hon*..... and a good sense of *hu*..... are very *imp*..... for a *hea*..... relationship.
6. We all want *sec*..... and good *hea*....., but we need a bit of *dan*..... in our lives too.

ANSWERS. COMPLETE THE WORDS:

You need a lot of **patience** in this job. You won't have much **success** if you get **angry** easily.

With her **intelligence** and her **beauty**, she has become one of the most **famous** people in the country.

It's **difficult** to be **successful** without a lot of **luck**.

It was very cold, so the best part of the climb was **dangerous** and **painful**, but we finally reached the **safety** of our camp.

Honesty and a good sense of **humour** are very **important** for a **healthy** relationship.

We all want **security** and good **health**, but we need a bit of **danger** in our lives too.

Word building: verbs and nouns

Word building: verbs and nouns

We can make nouns from verbs with the suffixes *-ment*, *-tion* / *-sion* and *-ance* / *-ence*.

amaze > amaz**ment**

introduce > intro**duction**

annoy > annoy**ance**

Be careful! Sometimes the spelling changes when you add a suffix. If necessary, use a dictionary to help you find the correct spelling.

1 Write the related nouns.

- 1 imagine
- 2 arrange
- 3 discuss
- 4 educate
- 5 excel
- 6 manage
- 7 amuse
- 8 organize
- 9 tolerate
- 10 enjoy
- 11 avoid
- 12 confirm

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words.

- 1 According to experts, digital television is the future of home (**entertain**)
- 2 When Clare entered the skateboarding, she didn't expect to win. (**compete**)
- 3 Jane couldn't taste the between the two cola drinks. (**differ**)
- 4 After discussing the results of the experiment, the scientists finally reached a (**conclude**)
- 5 Greg's parents gave him to go on holiday with his friends. (**permit**)

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words from the list.

agree confuse impress possess
 revise explain encourage

- 1 Robert managed to make a good at his job interview.
- 2 Sarah didn't hand in her homework, so the teacher asked her for an
- 3 Dave was arrested for of drugs.
- 4 After two weeks of negotiations, the company signed an which promised better working conditions.
- 5 Pam failed her exams because she hadn't done enough
- 6 Michael's parents gave him a lot of when he decided to play football professionally.
- 7 The concert was badly organised. There was a lot of about who was playing.

4 Complete the texts with the correct form of the words.

- 1 There has been an (**explode**) in the centre of Paris. The police say no one has been injured.
- 2 The government has promised to find a (**solve**) to rising unemployment.
- 3 A tornado has hit the coast of Florida. The cost of the (**destroy**) is estimated at fifty million dollars.
- 4 A recent government report shows that there has been a big (**improve**) in health care over the last five years.

Word building: nouns and adjectives

Word building: nouns and adjectives

We can make adjectives from nouns with the suffixes *-ous*, *-ic* and *-al*.

fame > **famous**, ambition > **ambitious**

photography > **photographic**, drama > **dramatic**

music > **musical**, maths > **mathematical**

Be careful! Sometimes the spelling changes when you add a suffix. If necessary, use a dictionary to help you find the correct spelling.

1 Write the related adjectives.

- 1 logic
- 2 fury
- 3 person
- 4 apology
- 5 rebel
- 6 technology
- 7 optimism
- 8 caution
- 9 nation
- 10 advantage
- 11 theory
- 12 pessimism

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

- 1 Jackie is very She wants to be a actress. (**ambition**)
- 2 The holiday was There was nothing to do and it rained all the time. (**disaster**)
- 3 Brenda was very when she heard that I'd split up with Pete. (**sympathy**)
- 4 You have to be fit and extremely to take part in this sport. (**energy**)
- 5 The party promised to cut taxation when it was elected. (**politics**)

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words from the list.

mystery	artist	practice
adventure	nerve	grammar

- 1 The actor felt before he went on stage. It was his first performance.
- 2 Sarah is very Last weekend she went bungee jumping with some friends.
- 3 I always find that mistakes are very difficult to correct.
- 4 Mark is very He can sing, dance and play a musical instrument.
- 5 You need a lot of experience if you want to be a primary school teacher.
- 6 Karen looked out of the window and saw a green light in the sky.

4 Complete the texts with the correct form of the words.

A ¹..... (**drama**) rescue took place off the coast of Cornwall yesterday. Coastguards received an SOS signal from a yacht which was in difficulty in ²..... (**mountain**) eight-metre-high waves. ³..... (**courage**) air and sea rescue services saved the captain and two crew members.

Last night a woman was robbed and attacked in Hyde Park in London. The police say the thief is extremely ⁴..... (**danger**). They are looking for witnesses who noticed anything ⁵..... (**suspicion**) at Hyde Park Corner last night.

According to experts, global warming is having a ⁶..... (**critic**) effect on the environment. Recent ⁷..... (**climate**) changes have had dramatic results, and have caused ⁸..... (**nature**) disasters in Latin America and Asia.

Word Building. ANSWERS TO WORKSHEETS.

Verbs and nouns

- 1**
- 1 imagination
 - 2 arrangement
 - 3 discussion
 - 4 education
 - 5 excellence
 - 6 management
 - 7 amusement
 - 8 organization
 - 9 tolerance
 - 10 enjoyment
 - 11 avoidance
 - 12 confirmation

- 2**
- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1 competition | 3 conclusion |
| 2 difference | 4 permission |

- 3**
- 1 explanation
 - 2 possession
 - 3 agreement
 - 4 revision
 - 5 encouragement
 - 6 confusion

- 4**
- 1 explosion
 - 2 solution
 - 3 destruction
 - 4 improvement

Nouns and adjectives

- 1**
- 1 logical
 - 2 furious
 - 3 personal
 - 4 apologetic
 - 5 rebellious
 - 6 technological
 - 7 optimistic
 - 8 cautious
 - 9 national
 - 10 advantageous
 - 11 theoretical
 - 12 pessimistic

- 2**
- | | |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1 disastrous | 3 energetic |
| 2 sympathetic | 4 political |

- 3**
- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1 adventurous | 4 practical |
| 2 grammatical | 5 mysterious |
| 3 artistic | |

- 4**
- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1 dramatic | 5 suspicious |
| 2 mountainous | 6 critical |
| 3 Courageous | 7 climatic |
| 4 dangerous | 8 natural |